



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-3000

NAVMC 3500.2B
C 465

27 AUG 2013

NAVMC 3500.2B

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A
(b) MCO 1553.3A
(c) MCO 3400.3F
(d) MCO 3500.27B W/Erratum
(e) MCRP 3-0A
(f) MCRP 3-0B
(g) MCO 1553.2B

Encl: (1) AAV T&R MANUAL

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this Training & Readiness (T&R) Manual, contain in enclosure (1), establishes training standards, regulations, and policies regarding the training of Marines and assigned Navy personnel in the Assault Amphibious Vehicle occupational field.

2. Cancellation. NAVMC 3500.2A

3. Scope

a. The Core Capability Mission Essential Task List in this manual is used in Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) for assessment and reporting of unit readiness. Units achieve training readiness for reporting in DRRS by gaining and sustaining proficiency in the training events in this manual at both collective (unit) and individual levels.

b. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute its mission and develop long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency and correct deficiencies. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps, and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines and assigned Navy personnel. Commanders will use reference (c) to incorporate Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense training into training plans and reference (d) to integrate Operational Risk Management. References (e) and (f) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

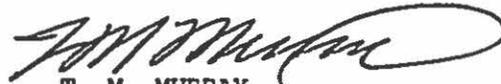
DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

c. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (g) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill training requirements established in this manual and provides career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

4. Information. Commanding General (CG), Training and Education Command (TECOM) will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM, Marine Air Ground Task Force Training and Education Standards Division (C 465), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, Virginia 22134.

5. Command. This manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

6. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.



T. M. MURRAY
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10033193800

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Location: _____
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this manual.)

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

AAV T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1. OVERVIEW

2. MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS LIST
MATRIX

3. BATTALION COMPANY-LEVEL
COLLECTIVE EVENTS

4. PLATOON-LEVEL COLLECTIVE
EVENTS

5. SECTION & CREW-LEVEL
COLLECTIVE EVENTS

7. MOS 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

8. MOS 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

9. AA BN LOW DENSITY MOS EVENTS

APPENDICES

A. TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

B. T&R CHANGES

C. AMMUNITION Requirements

D. SIMULATION

E. ACROMYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

F. GUNNERY INDIVIDUAL AND
COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION.	1000	1-2
UNIT TRAINING	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT.	1002	1-3
SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING.	1003	1-3
ORGANIZATION.	1004	1-4
T&R EVENT CODING.	1005	1-4
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)	1006	1-6
CRP CALCULATION	1007	1-7
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION	1008	1-7
CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR (CBRN) TRAINING. . .	1009	1-11
NIGHT TRAINING.	1010	1-11
OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)	1011	1-12
MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM	1012	1-12

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The T&R Program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task List(s) (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). This T&R Manual is built around these METLs and other related Marine Corps Tasks (MCT). All events contained in the Manual relate directly to these METLs and MCTs. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).

3. The T&R Manual is designed for use by unit commanders to determine pre-deployment training requirements in preparation for training and for Formal Learning Centers (FLCs) and Training Detachments to create courses of instruction. This directive focuses on individual and collective tasks performed by operating forces (OPFOR) units and supervised by personnel in the performance of unit Mission Essential Tasks (METs).

1001. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential. However, it is not necessary to have all individuals within a unit fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. During these periods, unit readiness is enhanced if emphasis is placed on the individual training of Marines on-hand. Subsequently, these Marines will be mission ready and capable of executing as part of a team when the full complement of personnel is available.

2. Commanders will ensure that all tactical training is focused on their combat mission. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan. In most cases, unit training should focus on achieving unit proficiency in the core METL. However, commanders will adjust their training focus to support METLs associated with a major Operational Plan (OPLAN)/Contingency Plan (CONPLAN) or named operation as designated by their higher commander and reported accordingly in the DRRS. Tactical training will support the METL in use by the commander and be tailored to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of training in a professional manner consistent with Marine Corps standards cannot be over emphasized.

3. Commanders will provide personnel the opportunity to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by this Manual. Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit as determined by the unit commander.

1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Unit Training Management (UTM) is the application of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) and the Marine Corps Training Principles. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its wartime mission.

2. UTM techniques, described in references (b) and (e), provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps Training Principles, explained in reference (b), provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

- Train as you fight
- Make commanders responsible for training
- Use standards-based training
- Use performance-oriented training
- Use mission-oriented training
- Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team
- Train to sustain proficiency
- Train to challenge

3. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective programs are contained in references (b), (e) and (f).

1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members

of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation).

2. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their MOS at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. Whether it involves individual or collective training events, they must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or before expiration of the designated sustainment interval. Performance of the training event, however, is not sufficient to ensure combat readiness. Leaders at all levels must evaluate the performance of their Marines and the unit as they complete training events, and only record successful accomplishment of training based upon the evaluation. The goal of evaluation is to ensure that correct methods are employed to achieve the desired standard, or the Marines understand how they need to improve in order to attain the standard. Leaders must determine whether credit for completing a training event is recorded if the standard was not achieved. While successful accomplishment is desired, debriefing of errors can result in successful learning that will allow ethical recording of training event completion. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.

3. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events. References (a) and (f) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations using the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

1004. ORGANIZATION. The AAV T&R Manual is comprised of 8 chapters and 6 appendices. Chapter 1 is an overview of the Ground T&R Program. Chapter 2 lists the Core Capability METs and their related Battalion and Company-level events. Chapters 3 through 6 contain collective events, Chapters 5 and 7 contain individual events, and Chapter 8 contains AA Bn low density MOS events. Appendices are noted in the table of contents.

1005. T&R EVENT CODING. An event contained within a T&R Manual is an individual or collective training standard. This section explains each of the components of a T&R event. These items will be included in all of the events in each T&R Manual. Community-based T&R Manuals may have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R Manuals. The event condition, event title (behavior) and event standard should be read together as a grammatical sentence.

1. Event Code. The event code is an up to 4-4-4 alphanumeric character set:

- a. First up to 4 characters indicate MOS or Community (e.g., 0321, 1812 or INTL)
- b. Second up to 4 characters indicate functional or duty area (e.g. DEF, FSPT, MVMT, etc.)
- c. Third 4 characters indicate the unit size and supported unit, if applicable (1000 through 9000), and sequence. Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of unit size to event code. NOTE: The titles for the various echelons are for example only, and are not exclusive. For example: 4000-level events are appropriate for Section-level events as noted, but also for Squad-level events.

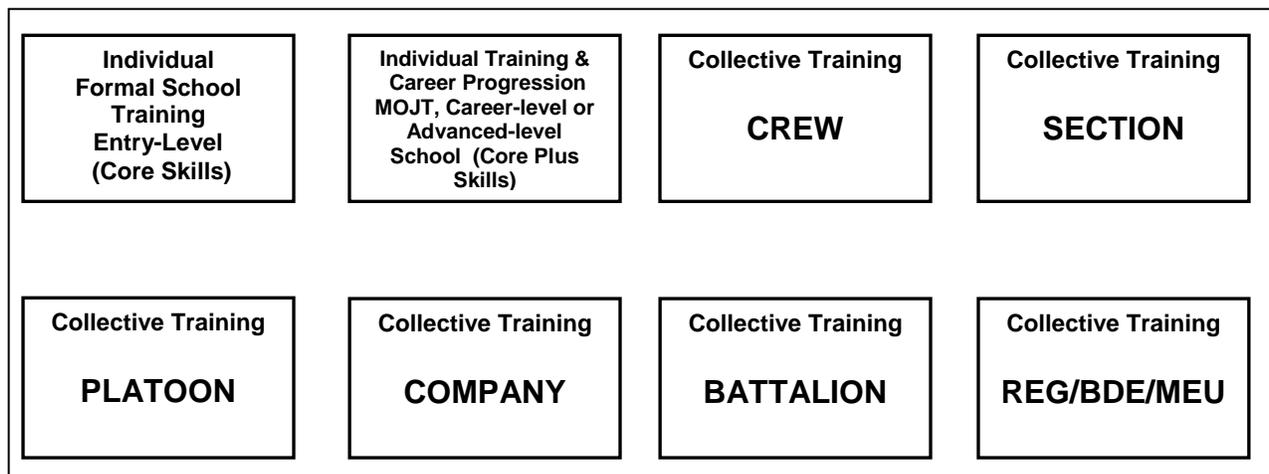


Figure 1: T&R Event Levels

(1) Grouping. Categorizing events with the use of a recognizable code makes the type of skill or capability being referenced fairly obvious. Examples include: PAT for patrolling events, DEF for events in the defense, FSPT for events related to fire support, etc. There is no special significance to the functional areas, but they should be intuitive to make it as easy as possible for the T&R user to find events. When organizing the T&R Manual, functional areas are alphabetized then the associated events are numbered. The events will be numbered based upon the introduction of each new functional area, allowing up to "999" events. For example: if there are seven Administrative events 4431 occupational field, then the events should start 4431-ADMN-1001 and run through 1007. Next, the Bulk Fuel events, BUFL should start at 4431-BUFL-1001.

(2) Sequencing. A numerical code is assigned to each individual (1000-2000-level) or collective (3000-9000-level) training event. The first number identifies the size of the unit performing the event, as depicted in figure 1-1. The second number is available for T&R Manuals with collective events that support those in other manuals to identify the echelon of unit being supported by a particular collective event. If a collective event is supported by other events or is performed in general support without regard to echelon, then a zero "0" will be utilized as the second number. For example: 0231-TGT-3801 would refer to an event conducted by a four Marine Targeting Cell supporting a Regiment or Group, 0231-TGT-3001 would represent

an event the Targeting Cell does in support of any sized unit. The event would not be labeled 0231-TGT-8001 because that would imply that a regiment sized targeting unit was performing some task. This is not possible, since no intelligence unit organizes in a unit larger than a Battalion. EXCEPTION: Events that relate to staff planning, to the conduct of a command operations center or to staff level decision making processes will be numbered according to the level of the unit to which the staff belongs. For example: an infantry battalion staff conducting planning for an offensive attack would be labeled as INF-PLAN-7001 even though the entire battalion is not actively involved in the planning of the operation. T&R event sequence numbers that begin with "9" are reserved for Marine Air Ground Task Forces (MAGTF) Command Element (CE) events. Marine Expeditionary Units (MEU) CE events will be numbered 90XX - 93XX. Marine Expeditionary Brigade (MEB) CE events will be numbered 94XX - 96XX. Marine Expeditionary Force (MEF) CE events will be numbered 97XX - 99XX.

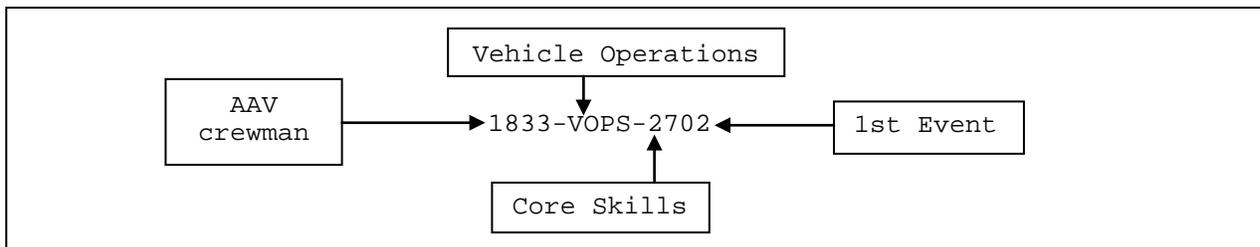


Figure 2: T&R Event Coding

1006. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage", as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. CRP is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. Unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called "Evaluation-Coded" (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

4. Individual combat readiness is assessed as the percentage of required individual events in which a Marine is current. This translates as the percentage of training events for his/her MOS and grade that the Marine successfully completes within the directed sustainment interval. Individual skills are developed through a combination of 1000-level training (entry-

level formal school courses), individual on-the-job training in 2000-level events, and follow-on formal school training. Skill proficiency is maintained by retraining in each event per the specified sustainment interval.

1007. CRP CALCULATION

1. Collective training begins at the 3000-level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. E-Coded collective events are the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has four E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: $75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325$

Unit CRP: $325 \text{ (total MET CRP)} / 5 \text{ (total number of METS)} = 65\%$

1008. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. Event Code. The event code is explained in paragraph 1005.
2. Title. The name of the event. The event title contains one action verb and ideally, one object.
3. Evaluation Coded. Collective events categorize the capabilities that a given unit may be expected to perform. There are some collective events that

the Marine Corps has determined that a unit MUST be able to perform, if that unit is to be considered fully ready for operations. These E-Coded events represent the irreducible minimum or the floor of readiness for a unit. E-Coded events are derived from the training measures of effectiveness for the METs for units that must report readiness in the DRRS. It would seem intuitive that most E-Coded events would be for Battalion sized units and higher since those are the units that report in DRRS. However, if the Marine Corps has determined that the readiness of a subordinate, supporting unit to accomplish a particular collective event is vital to the accomplishment of the supported unit's MET, then that lower echelon collective event is E-Coded.

4. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event in the judgment of the occupation field drafting the T&R Manual, even if those events are not listed as Measure of Effectiveness (MOEs) in a MET.

5. Sustainment Interval. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation or retraining requirements. Competencies and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are to be refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals be adhered to in order to ensure Marines maintain proficiency.

6. Billet/MOS. Each individual training event will contain a billet code and/or MOS that designates who is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed this manual and are listed for each event.

7. Grade. The Grade field indicates the rank at which Marines are required to complete the event.

8. Description. This field allows T&R developers to include an explanation of event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, i.e., engage fixed target with crew-served weapons. This is an optional field for individual events but its use is strongly encouraged for collective events. This field can be of great value guiding a FLC or OPFOR unit trying to discern the intent behind an event that might not be readily apparent.

9. Condition. Condition refers to the constraints that may affect event performance in a real-world environment. It indicates what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints or conditions under which the task is to be performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.). When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated. The content of the condition should be included in the event on a "by exception" basis. If there exists an assumption regarding the conditions under which all or most of the events in the Manual will be performed, then only those additional or exceptional items required should be listed in the condition. The common conditions under which all the events in

a chapter will be executed will be listed as a separate paragraph at the beginning of the chapter.

10. Standard. The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will be objective, quantifiable, and readily observable. Standards will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, completeness, time required, and sequencing the event is to be accomplished. These guidelines can be summarized in the acronym "ACTS" (Accuracy Completeness Time Sequence.) In no cases will "per the reference" or "per/in accordance with commander's intent" be used as a stand-alone standard.

11. Event Components/Performance Steps. Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event codes and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event. Event components are used for collective events; performance steps are used for individual events.

a. The event components and performance steps will be consciously written so that they may be employed as performance evaluation check lists by the operating forces.

b. Event components may be events one individual in the unit performs, events that small groups in the unit perform, or events involving the entire unit. After the publication of this order, all component events will identify the behaviors required in plain English but also by citing the precise event number the component event refers to, unless that component event only occurs as part of the collective event where it is listed. This provision will allow for specific events to be chained together in order to provide greater granularity for units and Marines executing the events, and clarity for those charged with evaluating unit performance.

12. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

13. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-Coded events) for the related subordinate level events.

14. Related ITEs. A list of all of the Individual Training Events (1000-2000-level events) that support the event.

15. Initial Training Setting. All individual events will designate the setting at which the skill is first taught, either at the FLC, in the OPFOR as MOJT, or via a distance learning product (DL).

16. References. The training references shall be utilized to determine task performance steps. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. T&R Manuals are designed to be a training outline, not to replicate or replace doctrinal publications, reference publications or technical manuals. References are key to developing detailed lesson plans, determining grading criteria, and ensuring standardization of training.

17. Distance Learning Products. Distance learning products include: Individual Multimedia Instruction (IMI), Computer-Based Training (CBT), Marine Corps Institute (MCI), etc. This notation is included when, in the opinion of the TRMG in consultation with the MTSD representative, the event can be taught via one of these media vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

18. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METS. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R Manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel

The ordnance requirements for one year of training for the events in the T&R will be aggregated into a table contained in an appendix to the T&R. The task analyst and the occupational field representatives will be careful not to "double count" ammunition that might be employed in the performance of individual and collective events that are chained.

19. Miscellaneous

a. This field provides space for any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. Units and FLCS are cautioned not to disregard this information or to consider the information of lesser importance than what is contained in other parts of the T&R event. Miscellaneous fields provide an opportunity for the drafters of the T&R event to communicate vital information that might not fit neatly into any other available field. The list may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours

•Road Miles

b. An example of a T&R event is provided in figure 1-4.

<u>0321-PAT-4101</u> Conduct Team Planning			
<u>EVALUATION CODED:</u> YES		<u>SUPPORTED MET(S):</u> 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9	
<u>DESCRIPTION:</u> The unit is conducting tactical operations. The unit has been issued a warning order to conduct reconnaissance patrols to collect information and to conduct normal security patrols. The patrol will be conducted on a 24-hour basis. This event may be trained to standard using the XYZ simulation program available at all MISTC locations.			
<u>CONDITION:</u> When given a Warning Order, Patrol Order or Frag Order.			
<u>STANDARD:</u> Prior to commencement of exercise or operation, so that subordinates have 2/3 of the total time before step-off for planning, to include all elements of the plan.			
<u>EVENT COMPONENTS:</u>			
1. Receive Warning Order or Patrol Order.			
2. Analyze for Mission using commander's guidance, METT-TSL, KOCOA.			
3. Analyze the mission and available information to identify specific tasks with respect to commander's guidance, METT-TSL and KOCOA.			
4. Create the plan.			
<u>RELATED ITES:</u>			
0321-PAT -1102	0321-PAT -1101	0321-COMM-1207	0321-FSPT-2301
0321-FSPT-2302	0321-FSPT-2303	0321-SURV-1403	
<u>REFERENCES:</u>			
1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company			
2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling			
3. MCRP 2-15.1 DRAFT Ground Reconnaissance Handbook			

Figure 1-4: Example of a T&R Event

1009. CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR (CBRN) TRAINING

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in CBRN defense, in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive CBRN attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in a CBRN environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in a CBRN environment, CBRN training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under CBRN conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1010. NIGHT TRAINING

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every climate and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on the availability of equipment and personnel.

1011. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

1. ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers will integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a Course Of Action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Sailors/Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM is found in references (b) and (d).

1012. MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for Ground T&R Program is to publish a T&R Manual for every readiness-reporting unit so that core capability METs are clearly defined with supporting collective training standards, and to publish community-based T&R Manuals for all occupational fields whose personnel augment other units to increase their combat and/or logistic capabilities. The vision for this program includes plans to provide a Marine Corps training management information system that enables tracking of unit and individual training accomplishments by unit commanders and small unit leaders, automatically computing CRP for both units and individual Marines based upon MOS and rank (or billet). Linkage of T&R Events to the MCTL, through the core capability METs, has enabled objective assessment of training readiness in the DRRS.

2. DRRS measures and reports on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. With unit CRP based on the unit's training toward its METs, the CRP will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's readiness. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to units' METLs.

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
AAV CORE MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIS.	2000	2-2
AAV MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX	2001	2-2
MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION	2002	2-6

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

2000. AAV CORE MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST (METL). The AAV METL Table lists the Standardized Core Mission Essential Tasks (MET), derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL), for the AAV community. This METL is used for readiness reporting in the Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS).

AAV CORE MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS

MARINE CORPS TASK LIST	AAV CORE METL
MCT 1.1.2	PROVIDE TASK ORGANIZED FORCES
MCT 1.12.1	CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS
MCT 1.4.1.1.2	BREACH BARRIERS AND OBSTACLES
MCT 1.6.1	Conduct Offensive Operations
MCT 1.6.4	CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS
MCT 5.3.2	ESTABLISH MEANS FOR COMMAND AND CONTROL

2001. AAV MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX. The AAV Mission Essential Task Matrix contains the METs identified in the AAV METL. The AAV MET matrix includes the designated MET number and supporting collective events.

MET#/MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK

MCT 1.1.2 PROVIDE TASK ORGANIZED FORCES	
AAV-CMDC-7001	Provide Alert Forces
AAV-CMDC-7002	Provide Assault Amphibian Unit(s) in Support of Expeditionary Operations
AAV-CMDC-7003	Support a Deployment
AAV-CMDC-7004	Conduct Planning
AAV-CMDC-6001	Conduct Planning
MCT 1.12.1 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS	
AAV-CMDC-7004	Conduct Planning
AAV-CSS-7003	Conduct Logistics Planning
AAV-AMPH-7001	Assist in Conducting Amphibious Staff Planning
AAV-CMDC-6001	Conduct Planning
AAV-CSS-6002	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations
AAV-CSS-6003	Support Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-AMPH-6001	Assist in Conducting Amphibious Staff Planning

AAV-AMPH-6002	Support Amphibious Operations
AAV-AMPH-6003	Conduct Surf Survival
AAV-CSS-5001	Provide Means for Tactical Logistics
AAV-CSS-5002	Conduct Recovery Operations
AAV-CSS-5003	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-AMPH-5001	Prepare for Amphibious Operations
AAV-AMPH-5002	Support Amphibious Assault
AAV-AMPH-5003	Support Amphibious Raid
AAV-AMPH-5004	Support in Amphibious Demonstration
AAV-AMPH-5005	Support Amphibious Withdrawal
AAV-AMPH-5006	Support Non-Combatant Evacuation Operations
AAV-CSS-4001	Conduct Recovery Operations
AAV-AMPH-4001	Conduct Waterborne Operations
AAV-AMPH-4002	Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV
AAV-AMPH-4003	Recover Disabled AAV in the Water
AAV-CMDC-3001	Conduct Communications
AAV-VOPS-3001	Conduct Demolition of AAV
AAV-AMPH-3001	Employ Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) in Water
AAV-AMPh-3002	Embark/Debark Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV)
AAV-AMPH-3603	Conduct Vehicle Emergency Procedures Afloat
MCT 1.4.1.1.2 BREACH BARRIERS AND OBSTACLES	
AAV-CMDC-7004	Conduct Planning
AAV-CSS-7003	Conduct Logistics Planning
AAV-CMDC-6001	Conduct Planning
AAV-CBST-5001	Support Breach
AAV-CBST-4001	Support Section Breach
AAV-CBST-4002	Support Team Breach
AAV-CBST-4003	Determine Deployment Options of Mk 1 Mod 0
AAV-CMDC-3001	Conduct Communications
AAV-VOPS-3001	Conduct Demolition of AAV
AAV-CBST-3001	Install Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance
AAV-CBST-3002	Load Ordnance
AAV-CBST-3003	Deploy Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System
AAV-CBST-3004	Offload Ordnance
AAV-CBST-3005	Remove Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance
AAV-TAC-3001	Employ AAV on Land
MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations	
AAV-CMDC-7004	Conduct Planning
AAV-CMDC-7005	Conduct Combat Operations Center (COC) Operations

AAV-CSS-7001	Conduct Battalion Support Area Operations
AAV-CSS-7002	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations
AAV-CMDC-7003	Conduct Logistics Planning
AAV-CMDC-6001	Conduct Planning
AAV-CSS-6001	Employ Combat Trains
AAV-CSS-6002	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations
AAV-CSS-6003	Support Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-TAC-6001	Support Mechanized Infantry Attack
AAV-GNRY-5001	Conduct Gun Table X
AAV-GNRY-5002	Conduct Gun Table XI
AAV-GNRY-5003	Conduct Gun Table XII
AAV-CSS-5001	Provide Means for Tactical Logistics
AAV-CSS-5002	Conduct Recovery Operations
AAV-CSS-5003	Support Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-TAC-5001	Support a Mechanized Attack
AAV-TAC-5002	Support Movement to Contact
AAV-TAC-5005	Support Urban Operations
AAV-TAC-5006	Support Riverine Operations
AAV-TAC-5007	Support River Crossing Operations
AAV-GNRY-4001	Conduct Gun Table VII
AAV-GNRY-4002	Conduct Gun Table VIII
AAV-GNRY-4003	Conduct Gun Table IX
AAV-CSS-4001	Conduct Recovery Operations
AAV-TAC-4001	Conduct a Mechanized Attack
AAV-CMDC-4001	Support Command Section Operations
AAV-CMDC-3001	Conduct Communications
AAV-GNRY-3001	Conduct Gun Table I
AAV-GNRY-3002	Conduct Gun Table II
AAV-GNRY-3003	Conduct Gun Table III
AAV-GNRY-3004	Conduct Gun Table IV
AAV-GNRY-3005	Conduct Gun Table V
AAV-GNRY-3006	Conduct Gun Table VI
AAV-VOPS-3001	Conduct Demolition of AAV
AAV-TAC-3001	Employ AAV on Land
MCT 1.6.4 CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS	
AAV-CMDC-7004	Conduct Planning
AAV-CSS-7001	Conduct Battalion Support Area Operations
AAV-CSS-7002	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations
AAV-CSS-7003	Conduct Logistics Planning

AAV-CMDC-6001	Conduct Planning
AAV-CSS-6001	Employ Combat Trains
AAV-CSS-6002	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations
AAV-CSS-6003	Support Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-GNRY-5001	Conduct Gun Table X
AAV-GNRY-5002	Conduct Gun Table XI
AAV-GNRY-5003	Conduct Gun Table XII
AAV-CSS-5001	Provide Means for Tactical Logistics
AAV-CSS-5002	Conduct Recovery Operations
AAV-CSS-5003	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-TAC-5003	Support Infantry Defense
AAV-TAC-5004	Support a Retrograde
AAV-TAC-5005	Support Urban Operations
AAV-GNRY-4001	Conduct Gun Table VII
AAV-GNRY-4002	Conduct Gun Table VIII
AAV-GNRY-4003	Conduct Gun Table IX
AAV-CSS-4001	Conduct Recovery Operations
AAV-TAC-4003	Support Infantry Defensive Operations
AAV-TAC-4004	Support a Retrograde
AAV-GNRY-3001	Conduct Gun Table I
AAV-GNRY-3002	Conduct Gun Table II
AAV-GNRY-3003	Conduct Gun Table III
AAV-GNRY-3004	Conduct Gun Table IV
AAV-GNRY-3005	Conduct Gun Table V
AAV-GNRY-3006	Conduct Gun Table VI
AAV-CMDC-3001	Conduct Communications
AAV-VOPS-3001	Conduct Demolition of AAV
AAV-TAC-3001	Employ AAV on Land
MCT 5.3.2 ESTABLISH MEANS FOR COMMAND AND CONTROL	
AAV-CMDC-7004	Conduct Planning
AAV-CMDC-7005	Conduct Combat Operations Center (COC) Operations
AAV-CMDC-7401	Conduct CBRN-E Operations
AAV-CMDC-7503	Conduct Logistics Planning
AAV-CMDC-6201	Conduct Planning
AAV-CMDC-4001	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-CMDC-3001	Conduct Communications
AAV-VOPS-3301	Conduct Demolition of AAV
AAV-TAC-3701	Employ AAV on Land

2002. MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION. The below is the description of the Marine Corps Tasks assigned to the AAV community.

MCT 1.1.2 Provide Task-Organized Forces. The Marine Corps organizes its operational forces as Marine Corps components and as MAGTFs to provide task-organized, self-sustaining multipurpose forces to the joint force or naval expeditionary force. These uniquely organized Marine Corps forces can respond to a wide range of operational and tactical missions and tasks, providing an unmatched combination of deployment and employment options.

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations. To conduct a military operation launched from the sea by an amphibious force, embarked in ships or craft with the primary purpose of introducing a landing force ashore to accomplish the assigned mission. Types of amphibious operations include assaults, withdrawals, demonstrations, raids, and other amphibious operations in a permissive, uncertain, or hostile environment.

MCT 1.4.1.1.2 Conduct Breaching Operations. To employ any means available to break through or secure a passage through an enemy defense, obstacle or fortification. This enables a force to maintain its mobility by removing or reducing natural and man-made obstacles.

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations. Take the initiative, gain freedom of action to allow swift transition from one action to another and to put the enemy at risk throughout the depth and space of the battlespace. Defeat, destroy or neutralize the enemy force by taking the fight to the enemy in such a way as to achieve victory at least cost.

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations. Take action to defeat an enemy attack. Buy time, to hold a piece of key terrain, to facilitate other operations, to preoccupy the enemy in one area so friendly forces can attack him in another, or to erode enemy resources at a rapid rate while reinforcing friendly operations.

MCT 5.3.2 Establish Means to Command and Control. To establish and provide controls and procedures for command and tactical movement of forces in a way that permits a commander to move his force quickly, securely, and efficiently. To take into account the size of units and related time and space factors. To pass on multiple routes at a designated speed, organized in serial march units; establish jamming teams and liaison parties; and move tactical command post before main body to synchronize and coordinate movement, etc. Control is established to ensure the commander flexibility to deploy his force as necessary for tactical purposes.

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

BATTALION COMPANY-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	3000	3-2
EVENT CODING	3001	3-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	3002	3-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	3003	3-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS	3004	3-4
BATTALION-LEVEL EVENTS	3005	3-4
COMPANY-LEVEL EVENTS	3006	3-11

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

BATTALION COMPANY-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

3000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains the Battalion and Company-level Assault Amphibian unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies METs and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the focal point for Platoon training, detailed in the subsequent chapters.

3001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the AAV Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion and Company level are:

CMDC - Command and Control	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	AMPH - Amphibious Operations
TAC - Tactical Operations	

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

1. Commanders should select which collective events under a MET will be E-Coded for purposes of recording and calculating Combat Readiness Percentages.

2. Each event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

3003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Battalion. The mission of the Assault Amphibian Battalion is to train, maintain, and prepare an Assault Amphibian Battalion capable of conducting amphibious and mechanized operations in order to support the ground combat element with maneuver, fires, force protection, command and control, and logistics. When appropriately resourced, be prepared to train partner nation forces, conduct provisional infantry operations, and conduct route security. The Assault Amphibian Battalion provides the Ground Combat Element with the general support lift, staff expertise, and command and control assets to plan and execute amphibious forcible entry and subsequent mechanized operations ashore. The Assault Amphibian Battalion has units of scalable capability, task organized to support each echelon of the Ground Combat Element from company to regiment. The Battalion is comprised of subordinate Assault Amphibian Companies and a Headquarters and Support company. The Assault Amphibian Battalion augments the Assault Amphibian Company's organic logistics capability by providing personnel, medical, resupply, and overflow second and third echelon maintenance.

- a. Conducts amphibious operations.
- b. Conducts mechanized operations.
- c. Provides staff and command and control assets to plan and execute mechanized operations.
- d. Conducts combat service support operations.
- e. Conducts mechanized breaching support.
- f. Conducts operations in CBRN environment.

2. Assault Amphibian Company. The mission of the Assault Amphibian Company is to train, maintain, and prepare an Assault Amphibian Company capable of conducting amphibious and mechanized operations in order to support the Ground Combat Element with maneuver, fires, force protection, command and control, and logistics. When appropriately resourced, be prepared to train partner nation forces, conduct provisional infantry operations, and conduct route security. The Assault Amphibian Company provides the Ground Combat Element with the general support lift, staff expertise, and command and control assets to plan and execute amphibious forcible entry and subsequent mechanized operations ashore. The Assault Amphibian Company has units of scalable capability, task organized to support echelons of the Ground Combat Element from company to battalion. The Assault Amphibian Company consists of 3 Assault Amphibian Platoons, a Headquarters Platoon, and a Maintenance Platoon or detachment. The company commander functions as a special staff officer to the supported unit in AAV employment in addition to commanding the company.

- a. Conduct amphibious operations.
- b. Conduct mechanized operations.
- c. Conduct offensive operations.
- d. Conduct defensive operations
- g. Conduct operations in a CBRN environment.

3. Assault Amphibian Headquarters and Service (H&S) Company. The mission of the Headquarters and Service Company is to provide the Battalion Commander the means to train, maintain, prepare and sustain subordinate units in order to support the Ground Combat Element with maneuver, fires, force protection, command and control, and logistics. Through its subordinate platoons and

sections, the H&S Company provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply and other service support functions to the AA battalion.

- a. Conduct combat service support operations in support of the Assault Amphibian Battalion.
- b. Provide higher echelon support of maintenance to the Assault Amphibian Companies.
- c. Provide command and control infrastructure for the Assault Amphibian Battalion staff.
- d. Conduct rear area security for the Assault Amphibian Battalion Support Area.
- e. Conduct operations in NBC environment.
- f. Participate in convoy operations.

3004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

BATTALION-LEVEL EVENTS			
Event Code	Eval Coded	Event	Page
AAV-CMDC-7001		Provide Alert Forces	3-4
AAV-CMDC-7002	Yes	Provide Assault Amphibian Unit(s) in Support of Expeditionary Operations	3-5
AAV-CMDC-7003		Support a Deployment	3-6
AAV-CMDC-7004		Conduct Planning	3-6
AAV-CMDC-7005	Yes	Conduct Combat Operations Center Operations	3-7
AAV-CSS-7001		Conduct Battalion Support Area Operations	3-8
AAV-CSS-7002	Yes	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations	3-9
AAV-CSS-7003		Conduct Logistics Planning	3-9
AAV-AMPH-7001		Assist in Conducting Amphibious Staff Planning	3-11
COMPANY-LEVEL EVENTS			
AAV-CMDC-6001		Conduct Planning	3-11
AAV-CSS-6001		Employ Combat Trains	3-12
AAV-CSS-6002	Yes	Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations	3-13
AAV-CSS-6003		Support Casualty Evacuation Operations	3-13
AAV-AMPH-6001		Assist in Conducting Amphibious Staff Planning	3-14
AAV-AMPH-6002		Support Amphibious Operations	3-15
AAV-AMPH-6003		Conduct Surf Survival	3-16
AAV-TAC-6001		Support Mechanized Infantry Operations	3-16

3005. BATTALION-LEVEL EVENTS

AAV-CMDC-7001: Provide Alert Forces

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: An important type of Special Purpose MAGTF is the Air Contingency Force (ACF). An ACF is an on-call, task-organized alert force that is maintained by all three Marine Expeditionary Forces (MEF). It can be dispatched virtually worldwide to respond to a rapidly developing crisis. The ACF is the MEF's force is readiness. It can deploy independently or in conjunction with amphibious forces, MPFs, or other expeditionary forces.

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters' operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To deploy in response to a rapidly developing crisis.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Review the concept of operations / operations plan to determine specific transportation requirements
2. Identify TPFDD requirements to higher headquarters
3. Formulate an embarkation plan with level 4 data (weight and dimensions)
4. Forecast lift requirements
5. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution
6. Submit transportation requirements to higher headquarters
7. Disseminate a movement schedule to the appropriate units
8. Supervise embarkation / movement to staging area
9. Support deployment and distribution planning through the use of automated information systems

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CMDC-7003 AAV-CMDC-7004

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.3G Unit Embarkation Handbook
2. MCWP 3-32 Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)

AAV-CMDC-7002: Provide Assault Amphibian Unit(s) In Support of Expeditionary Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Expeditionary Operations consist of MEU and MEB level operations.

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters' operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To provide the commander with mechanized, amphibious capability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis

2. Task organize
3. Change of Operational (CHOP) control/command AA Unit to supported command

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5001	AAV-AMPH-6001	AAV-AMPH-6002
AAV-AMPH-6003	AAV-TAC-5005	AAV-TAC-5006
AAV-TAC-5007	AAV-TAC-6001	

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3120.9 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit
2. MCRP 4-11.3G Unit Embarkation Handbook
3. MCRP 5-12D Organization of Marine Corps Forces
4. MCWP 3-32 Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)

AAV-CMDC-7003: Support a Deployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters' operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To provide forward deployed forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis
2. Task organize
3. Conduct pre-deployment training
4. Change of Operational (CHOP) control/command AA Unit to supported command

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5001	AAV-AMPH-5002	AAV-AMPH-6001
AAV-AMPH-6002	AAV-CMDC-6001	

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3120.9 Policy for Marine Expeditionary Unit
2. MCRP 4-11.3G Unit Embarkation Handbook
3. MCRP 5-12D Organization of Marine Corps Forces
4. MCWP 3-32 Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)

AAV-CMDC-7004: Conduct Planning

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.12.1 MCT 1.4.1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4 MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters' operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To produce plans and orders which support the accomplishment of the mission and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish timeline for planning and preparation
2. Conduct planning process (MCP, R2P2)
3. Conduct confirmation brief
4. Develop staff products, operations plans, orders, annexes and appendices
5. Conduct rehearsals
6. Modify plan as required
7. Issue order
8. Transition

CHAINED EVENTS: AAV-CMDC-6001

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
2. MCWP 3-40.1 MAGTF Command and Control
3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)

AAV-CMDC-7005: Conduct Combat Operations Center Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4 MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given a higher headquarters' operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To integrate systems, personnel and processes to command and control operations and support the commanders decision making.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish a COC with C4 systems/applications that support the Command Post echelon (Jump/TAC, Forward, Main and Rear)
2. Establish a COC Watch to support mission accomplishment
3. Establish COC security
4. Maintain battle rhythm
5. Support war-fighting functions
6. Conduct Information Management procedures
7. Conduct battle drills
8. Maintain a Common Operational Picture
9. Conduct cross boundary coordination with adjacent units

10. Transition control of operations to the appropriate echelon
11. Integrate the Intelligence, Administrative and Logistical Operations Center
12. Displace the COC
13. Maintain continuity of operations during displacement of the COC
14. Ensure operational security (OPSEC)/communications security (COMSEC) measures are employed

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-6001 AAV-CSS-6002 AAV-CSS-6003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-0 Operations
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Recommended preparatory training includes SharePoint End User Course, WO/WC Course, C2PC Leader's Course, BFT Leader's Course, CPoF Leader's Course and BAT Leader's Course. 2. Must know collaborative tools (web-based tools) used by your unit. Collaborative tools are identified by the IMO. 3. C2 system training is available via home- station training at the local MAGTF Integrated Systems Training Center (MISTC) and DVTE.

AAV-CSS-7001: Conduct Battalion Support Area Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters' order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To maintain sustainability of Assault Amphibian units.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop concept of supply and sustainment
2. Identify shortfalls and acceptable alternatives
3. Task organize
4. Develop transportation, logistics packages and movement plans
5. Position consideration
6. Conduct site survey
7. Occupy Battalion Support Area
8. Establish local security and guard forces
9. Establish Command Operations Center
10. Establish maintenance facility
11. Conduct recovery, replacement and evacuation operations
12. Establish health, food and religious services
13. Prepare for follow on operations

14. Conduct displacement

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-CSS-7003

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CMDC-6001 AAV-CSS-6001 AAV-CSS-6002
AAV-CSS-6003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
 2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
 5. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
-

AAV-CSS-7002: Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters' operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To return the material to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Organize battalion support area
2. Provide condition, location and circumstances of damage
3. Coordinate and dispatch contact team or battle damage assessment and repair assets
4. Recover and repair equipment
5. Destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable
6. Provide updates to higher headquarters

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-6001 AAV-CSS-6002

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
 4. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
 5. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

AAV-CSS-7003: Conduct Logistics Planning

AAV-AMPH-7001: Assist in Conducting Amphibious Staff Planning

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a planning directive/warning order.

STANDARD: To support the concept of operations within the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Assist in intelligence preparation of the operating environment
2. Assist in the Planning Process
3. Assist in selecting recommended Landing Area, Landing Force objectives, and beachhead for CLF/Commander Amphibious Task Force approval
4. Interpret intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance, to include hydrographic surveys
5. Assist in the integration of the landing plan with the scheme of maneuver and supporting plans
6. Assist in developing the operation plan, embarkation plan, debarkation plan and landing plan
7. Provide input for the development of the approach schedule
8. Provide embarkation requirements, serial assignment, Landing Craft and Amphibian Vehicle Assignment Table (LCAVAT) documents
9. Conduct rehearsals, inspections and unit brief-backs
10. Coordinate and liaise with Navy and Marine planning staffs.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-6001	AAV-AMPH-6001	AAV-AMPH-6002
AAV-AMPH-6002	AAV-CMDC-6001	AAV-CMDC-6001

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
4. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCWP 3-31.6 Supporting Arms Coordination in Amphibious Operations
6. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
7. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics

3006. COMPANY-LEVEL EVENTS

AAV-CMDC-6001: Conduct Planning

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2	MCT 1.12.1	MCT 1.4.1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1	MCT 1.6.4	MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters' operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To produce plans and orders that support accomplishment of the mission and commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish timeline for planning and preparation
2. Complete the planning process (MCP/P/R2P2)
3. Conduct confirmation brief
4. Assist developing staff products
5. Conduct rehearsals
6. Modify plan as required

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5001	AAV-AMPH-5003	AAV-AMPH-5004
AAV-AMPH-5006	AAV-TAC-5005	AAV-TAC-5006
AAV-TAC-5007		

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
2. MCWP 3-40.1 MAGTF Command and Control
3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP/P)

AAV-CSS-6001: Employ Combat Trains

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given AA unit engaged in tactical operations.

STANDARD: To distribute critical supplies, provide recovery or evacuate casualties.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine the CSS requirements
2. Task organize the combat trains
3. Control movement in conjunction within concept of operations
4. Determine method of replenishment
5. Conduct recovery and evacuation operations if needed
6. Conduct replenishment

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-5001	AAV-CSS-5002	AAV-CSS-5003
AAV-TAC-5003	AAV-TAC-5005	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 4-90.1 Heavy Brigade Combat Team Logistics
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations

4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
5. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
6. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)
8. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

AAV-CSS-6002: Conduct Recovery and Evacuation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To return the material to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Organize the company combat trains
2. Platoons provide condition, location and circumstances of damage
3. Coordinate and dispatch contact team or battle damage assessment and repair assets
4. Recover and repair equipment
5. Destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable
6. Provide updates to higher headquarters

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-5001 AAV-CSS-5002

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-CSS-6003: Support Casualty Evacuation Operations

5. Assist with developing the Landing Craft And Vehicle Assignment Table (LCAVAT), Serial Assignment Tables, and the embarkation plan
6. Conduct rehearsals, inspections, and unit brief-backs

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5001 AAV-AMPH-5002 AAV-AMPH-5003
AAV-AMPH-5004 AAV-AMPH-5005 AAV-AMPH-5006
AAV-CSS-5001

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations
5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-6002: Support Amphibious Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given an operations order or warning order.

STANDARD: To conduct an operation launched from the sea by naval and landing forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Plan amphibious operations
2. Embark amphibious shipping
3. Conduct rehearsals
4. Move to AOR
5. Conduct action

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5001 AAV-AMPH-5002 AAV-AMPH-5003
AAV-AMPH-5004 AAV-AMPH-5005 AAV-AMPH-5006
AAV-CSS-5001

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations, Sep 2001
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per crew
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

AAV-AMPH-6003: Conduct Surf Survival

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This task is designed to enhance safety and confidence with surviving emergency vehicle evacuation afloat.

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and AAVs outside the surf zone.

STANDARD: To have evacuated personnel swim to shore.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning and coordination
2. Conduct ORM
3. Supervise and facilitate Marines swim to shore.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5001 AAV-AMPH-5003 AAV-AMPH-5004
AAV-AMPH-5005

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3840.1B Joint Surf Manual
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Sustainment Interval for the Reserve
Component is 36 months.

AAV-TAC-6001: Support Mechanized Infantry Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given infantry unit, mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To ensure synchronized, mutually supportive, and integrated efforts of the AAV unit and supported unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine dismount and link-up/remount points, and load/bump plan
2. Determine concept of support for organic combat trains
3. Apply movement techniques.
4. Adhere to control measures
5. Submit combat reports when required
6. Conduct actions on the objective
7. Consolidate and reorganize on the objective

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5002	AAV-AMPH-5004	AAV-CBTS-5001
AAV-CSS-5003	AAV-GNRY-5003	AAV-TAC-5002
AAV-TAC-5003	AAV-TAC-5004	AAV-TAC-5005
AAV-TAC-5006	AAV-TAC-5007	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.95 Cavalry Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FMFM 6 Ground Combat Operations
4. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
5. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations, Sep 2001
6. MCDP 1-3 Tactics
7. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
8. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE.	4000	4-2
EVENT CODING	4001	4-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	4002	4-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	4003	4-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS	4004	4-3
PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	4005	4-4

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

4000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon level Assault Amphibian unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to platoons and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

4001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the AAV Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Platoon level are:

GNRY - Gunnery

TAC - Tactical Operations

CBST- Combat Support

CSS - Combat Service Support

AMPH - Amphibious Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

4002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

4003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Platoon. The mission of the AA platoon is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and their equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The AA platoon consists of 12 AAVP7A1 and is organized into four (4) sections of three vehicles. The platoon is lead by the AA

platoon commander who directly advises the infantry company commander on AAV employment.

- a. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct offensive operations.
- e. Conduct defensive operations.
- f. Employ AA platoon fires.
- g. Conduct operations in CBRN-E environment.

2. Assault Amphibian Platoon, Mine Countermeasure. The mission of Mine Countermeasure (MCM) platoon is to provide breaching capability to the breach commander. The AA MCM platoon is composed of 24 AAVP7Als with crews, with 12 MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance Systems organized into four sections. The MCM platoon is led by the platoon commander who supports the breach commander.

- a. Conduct breaching operations.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct defensive operations.
- e. Employ AA MCM platoon fires.
- f. Conduct operations in CBRN-E environment.

4004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

PLATOON-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS			
Event Code	Eval Coded	Event	Page
AAV-GNRY-5001		Conduct Gun Table X	4-4
AAV-GNRY-5002		Conduct Gun Table XI	4-5
AAV-GNRY-5003	Yes	Conduct Gun Table XII	4-5
AAV-CBTS-5001		Support a Breach	4-6
AAV-CSS-5001		Provide Means for Tactical Logistics	4-8
AAV-CSS-5002		Conduct Recovery Operations	4-8
AAV-CSS-5003		Support Casualty Evacuation Operations	4-9
AAV-AMPH-5001		Prepare for Amphibious Operations	4-10
AAV-AMPH-5002	Yes	Support Amphibious Assault	4-11
AAV-AMPH-5003	Yes	Support Amphibious Raid	4-12
AAV-AMPH-5004	Yes	Support in Amphibious Demonstration	4-13
AAV-AMPH-5005	Yes	Support Amphibious Withdrawal	4-14
AAV-AMPH-5006		Support Non-Combatant Evacuation Operations	4-14
AAV-TAC-5001	Yes	Support a Mechanized Attack	4-15
AAV-TAC-5002		Support Movement to Contact	4-16
AAV-TAC-5003	Yes	Support Infantry Defense	4-17
AAV-TAC-5004		Support a Retrograde	4-18
AAV-TAC-5005	Yes	Support Urban Operations	4-18
AAV-TAC-5006		Support Riverine Operations	4-19
AAV-TAC-5007		Support River Crossing Operations	4-20

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XII is designed to evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon, allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and Operations order (OPORD).

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commanders METT-TCSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3006 AAV-GNRY-4003 AAV-GNRY-5001
AAV-GNRY-5002

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 AAV Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	3600 rounds per Platoon
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	3600 rounds per Platoon
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	768 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. AAV-TT; 2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE); 3. MILES.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII. 4. 3600 rounds of DODIC A576 OR A555 will be used to execute this task, not both.

AAV-CBTS-5001: Support a Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: In-stride, deliberate, amphibious and assault breaches are to be determined by mission and supported unit. Each type of breach demands same performance of crew, team and section in execution, differences lie only in time and environment obstacle is to be reduced or breached.

CONDITION: Given a Mobility/Counter Mobility AAV Platoon, area of operations and higher's operations order.

STANDARD: To create multiple lanes to allow maneuver forces freedom of movement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning
2. Identify type of breach
3. Determine physical environment
4. Apply breaching fundamentals SOSR
5. Task organize MCM assets

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2004 1833-CBTS-2007 AAV-CBTS-3003

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CBTS-4001 AAV-CBTS-4002

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-15 Joint Doctrine for Barriers, Obstacles and Mine Warfare
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
5. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
6. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
J143 Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	3 rockets per AAV
ML25 Charge, Demolition Linear M59A1	3 charges per AAV
ML26 Charge, Demolition Inert Linear M69	3 charges per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17820 Engineer Qualification Range, Non-Standardized

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This event is required for the MCM AAV Platoon only. 2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1004	1833-AMPH-2002	1833-CMDC-1003
1833-CMDC-1004	1833-VOPS-2005	AAV-AMPH-4003
AAV-CSS-4002		

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-CSS-5003: Support Casualty Evacuation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

CONDITION: Given injured personnel and a dedicated AAV With litter.

STANDARD: To move casualty to a facility that can provide the necessary treatment capability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop casualty collection plan and/or CASEVAC plan.
2. Establish Casualty Collection Point or support an already established Casualty Collection Point.
3. Corpsman stabilizes and prioritize casualty
4. Evacuate casualty to Casualty Collection Points or next higher echelon of care.

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-1001	1833-CMDC-1002	1833-CMDC-1003
1833-CMDC-2007	1833-VOPS-1013	AAV-TAC-4001
AAV-TAC-4002	AAV-TAC-4003	

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 3-02G First Aid
3. MCRP 4-11.1G Patient Movement
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-AMPH-5001: Prepare for Amphibious Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This is an all-encompassing event designed to highlight major tasks that an AAV platoon must accomplish before entering the water, not necessarily while operating with infantry or amphibious shipping.

CONDITION: Given an AAV platoon and operation order or warning order.

STANDARD: To complete of all required certifications and tasks prior to conducting water operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Ensure AA personnel are swim and surf qualified.
2. Conduct mission analysis.
3. Task organize.
4. Conduct planning.
5. Coordinate with Navy and Marine planning staffs as required.
6. Develop concept of support and load plans as required.
7. Produce necessary documents.
8. Integrate plans with supported and adjacent units.
9. Complete pre-water operations checks and inspections.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-2002 1833-CMDC-2008

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1001	1833-AMPH-1003	1833-AMPH-1005
1833-CMDC-1003	1833-CMDC-1004	1833-CMDC-2002
1833-CMDC-2003	1833-CMDC-2008	1833-VOPS-1002
1833-VOPS-1010	AAV-AMPH-4001	AAV-AMPH-4002
AAV-AMPH-4003		

REFERENCES:

1. JP 3-02.2 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Embarkation
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
4. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-5002: Support Amphibious Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

CONDITION: Given an embarked unit, a mission, and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To land the surface assault elements and conduct operations ashore.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Coordinate with Navy and Marine planning staffs
2. Conduct planning and task organize
3. Conduct ship-to-objective maneuver
4. Conduct actions on the objective

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1001	1833-AMPH-1003	1833-CMDC-1004
1833-CMDC-2003	1833-CMDC-2008	1833-VOPS-1002
1833-VOPS-2002		

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1002	1803-CMDC-1001	1803-CMDC-1002
1803-CMDC-1003	1833-CMDC-2001	1833-CMDC-2002
1833-CMDC-2003	1833-CMDC-2004	1833-CMDC-2007
1833-GNRY-2007	AAV-AMPH-5001	

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. JP 3-02.2 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
7. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

AAV-AMPH-5003: Support Amphibious Raid

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To make a swift incursion into or temporary occupation of an objective followed by a planned withdrawal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task organize for the raid
2. Conduct ship to objective maneuver
3. Maneuver security element into designated positions
4. Maneuver support element to over-watch position
5. Maneuver assault element to designated assault position
6. Execute planned withdrawal

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1001	1833-AMPH-1003	1833-CMDC-1004
1833-CMDC-2003	1833-CMDC-2008	1833-VOPS-1002
1833-VOPS-2002		

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1001	1803-CMDC-1002	1803-CMDC-1003
1833-AMPH-1002	1833-CMDC-2001	1833-CMDC-2002
1833-GNRY-2007	AAV-AMPH-5001	AAV-AMPH-5002
AAV-CSS-5003		

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
6. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

AAV-AMPH-5004: Support an Amphibious Demonstration

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To deceive the enemy by a show of force, deluding the enemy into taking an unfavorable course of action.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Launch from amphibious shipping
2. Maneuver AAVs into required tactical wave formations
3. Conduct turn away
4. Re-embark amphibious shipping

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1001	1833-AMPH-1002	1833-AMPH-1003
1833-CMDC-1004	1833-CMDC-2008	1833-VOPS-1002

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-3001	AAV-AMPH-3002	AAV-AMPH-3003
AAV-AMPH-3604	AAV-AMPH-4001	AAV-AMPH-4003
AAV-AMPH-5001		

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
6. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

AAV-AMPH-5005: Support an Amphibious Withdrawal

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To extract forces from a hostile or potentially hostile shore to amphibious shipping.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning
2. Establish defensive measures in the troop embarkation area
3. Conduct delaying/defensive actions as necessary
4. Initiate withdrawal
5. Recover aboard amphibious shipping

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1001	1803-AMPH-1002	1833-AMPH-2002
1833-CMDC-2003	1833-VOPS-2002	

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-3001	AAV-AMPH-3002	AAV-AMPH-3003
AAV-AMPH-4001	AAV-AMPH-4002	AAV-AMPH-4003
AAV-AMPH-5001		

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
6. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	2 per crew
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	2 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

AAV-AMPH-5006: Support Non-combatant Evacuation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

STANDARD: To maneuver the supported unit into position and provide fire support.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning, inspections, rehearsals and preparations
2. Determine dismount points, load / bump plans, and linkup points/procedures.
3. Assist in development of scheme of maneuver
4. Develop means of communication between dismounted unit and supporting mechanized assets
5. Apply movement techniques and formations
6. Conduct immediate actions / battle drills as required
7. Employ UGWS in support of infantry maneuver/movement
8. Dismount / employ infantry to support / protect vehicles when required by situation and terrain
9. Conduct actions on the objective
10. Develop means of communication between dismounted unit and supporting mechanized assets

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-4002	AAV-CSS-5003	AAV-GNRY-3006
AAV-GNRY-4003	AAV-GNRY-5003	AAV-TAC-3001
AAV-TAC-4001	AAV-TAC-5005	AAV-TAC-5006
AAV-TAC-5007		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.95 Cavalry Operations
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

AAV-TAC-5002: Support Movement to Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To gain or maintain contact with the enemy.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task organize
2. Apply movement techniques
3. Adhere to control measures
4. Submit combat reports

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CMDC-4001 AAV-CSS-4002 AAV-GNRY-4003
AAV-TAC-4001 AAV-TAC-4003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-TAC-5003: Support Infantry Defense

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given a mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To identify the appropriate type of defensive operation and method to use, and apply defensive fundamentals.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task organize
2. Conduct planning, preparation and inspections
3. Identify and mark primary, alternate and supplementary positions
4. Identify and build the Engagement Area(s)
5. Occupy battle position
6. Produce, receive and forward fire plan sketches and range cards
7. Adhere to communications and signals plan
8. Establish and rehearse final protective fires, counterattack plan and defensive battle drills
9. Establish alert postures
10. Conduct continuing actions
11. Submit combat reports

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-4002 AAV-GNRY-4003 AAV-TAC-4002
AAV-TAC-4003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations

3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

AAV-TAC-5004: Support a Retrograde

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given a mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To gain a tactical or operational advantage by repositioning forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify type and purpose of retrograde
2. Plan for alternate or successive delaying actions as required actions
3. Establish tactical control measures

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-4002 AAV-CSS-5002 AAV-CSS-5003
AAV-TAC-4003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV-TAC-5005: Support Urban Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

CONDITION: Given a mission and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To maneuver and provide support to an infantry unit in built up areas.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task organize
2. Identify adjacent unit boundaries
3. Adhere to urban specific factors and restrictions (airspace, super surface, intra-surface, surface and subsurface)
4. Identify key terrain labeling (Urban Area Reference System)
5. Establish target precedence, consider effects for all weapon systems and assess potential collateral damage
6. Isolate the objective
7. Support actions on the objective
8. Consolidate and reorganize
9. Submit combat reports

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CMDC-4001	AAV-CSS-4002	AAV-GNRY-4003
AAV-GNRY-5003	AAV-TAC-4001	AAV-TAC-5001

REFERENCES:

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

AAV-TAC-5006: Support Riverine Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To prevent an opposing force from using the river.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine environmental factors
2. Determine type of operation
3. Task organize unit

4. Execute mission

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1001 1833-CMDC-2003

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1003	AAV-AMPH-3001	AAV-AMPH-3002
AAV-AMPH-3003	AAV-AMPH-3604	AAV-AMPH-4001
AAV-AMPH-4002	AAV-AMPH-4003	

REFERENCES:

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-35.4 Doctrine for Navy/Marine Corps Joint Riverine Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17921 Armored Vehicle Launch Bridge, Raft, And Ford Area

AAV-TAC-5007: Support River Crossing Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters operation order and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To cross a water obstacle.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct terrain analysis
2. Determine type of crossing
3. Advance to the river
4. Assault across the river
5. Advance from the exit bank
6. Secure the Bridgehead Line

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1001 1833-CMDC-2003

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1003	AAV-AMPH-3001	AAV-AMPH-3002
AAV-AMPH-3003	AAV-AMPH-3604	AAV-AMPH-4001
AAV-AMPH-4002	AAV-AMPH-4003	

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

Facility Code 17921 Armored Vehicle Launch Bridge, Raft, And Ford Area

Facility Code 17922 Floating Bridge Site

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

SECTION & CREW-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	5000	5-2
EVENT CODING.	5001	5-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.	5002	5-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY.	5003	5-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	5004	5-4
SECTION-LEVEL EVENTS.	5005	5-5
CREW-LEVEL EVENTS	5006	5-16

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

SECTION & CREW-LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

5000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Section and Crew-level Assault Amphibian unit events (4000 and 3000-Levels). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to sections and crews and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

5001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the AAV Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Section and Crew level are:

GNRY - Gunnery	CMDC - Command and Control
VOPS - Vehicle Operations	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	AMPH - Amphibious Operations
TAC - Tactical Operations	

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

5002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

5003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Assault Amphibian Section. The mission of the Assault Amphibian (AA) section is to provide combat support to the infantry rifle platoon. The AA section consists of three AAV crews and is led by the AA section leader. He exercises tactical control of his AAVs under the command of the AA platoon commander. Additionally, an AA section may be utilized for supporting units such as the 81mm mortar platoon or an engineer platoon.

- a. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct offensive operations.
- e. Conduct defensive operations.
- f. Employ AA section fires.
- g. Operate in an NBC environment.

2. Assault Amphibian Section, Command. The mission of the AA command section is to provide battalion and regimental level staffs with a mechanized command center. The AA command section also provides mutual support for the AAVC7A1 with a secondary vehicle for security and logistical support. The AA command section consists of one AAVP7A1 and one AAVC7A1 vehicle.

- a. Establish AAVC7A1 as command post.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct defensive operations.
- e. Operate in a CBRN environment.
- f. Employ AA command section fires.

3. Assault Amphibian Section, Mobility/Counter-Mobility Platoon. The mission of the AA Mine Countermeasure Section (MCM) is to provide breaching capability to the breach commander. The AA MCM section consists of two AAVP7A1 vehicles and two AAVP7A1 vehicles with Mk 154 kits. The section is further broken down into two teams, each team with one AAVP7A1 and one AAVP7A1 with Mk 154 kit. The MCM section is led by the AA MCM section leader.

- a. Conduct breaching operations.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct defensive operations.
- e. Operate in a CBRN environment.
- f. Employ AA section fires.

4. AAV Crew, AAVP7A1. The mission of the AAVP7A1 crew is to support the reinforced infantry squad within the mission of the AA section. The AAV crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crew chief and two crewmen. The AAV crew operates the AAVP7A1. The crew is led by the vehicle crew chief and operates under the direction of the AA section leader.

- a. Operate the AAV on land and in water with vehicles in section.
- b. Transport embarked personnel and cargo.
- c. Employ the Uppgunned Weapons Station.
- d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
- e. Operate in a CBRN-E environment.

5. AAV Crew, AAVC7A1. The mission of the AAVC7A1 crew is to support the battalion and regimental level headquarters as a mechanized command post/fire support coordination center. The AAVC7A1 intercom assets provide the embarked troop commander and his staff with the capability to communicate with each other and to remotely operate radio assets from staff positions within the vehicle. The AAVC7A1 weapon is primarily for self-defense. The

AAVC7A1 crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crew chief and two crewmen, and is augmented by a communication technician Marine. The crew is led by the crew chief and operates under the direction of the AA command section leader.

- a. Operate the AAVC7A1 on land and in water with vehicles in section.
- b. Operate the AAVC7A1 communications equipment.
- c. Employ the M240_ medium machine gun.
- d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
- e. Perform PMCS on communications equipment.
- f. Operate in a CBRN-E environment.

6. AAV Crew, MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. The mission of the AAVP7A1, with MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kit, crew is to provide breaching capability for the AA Mobility/Counter-Mobility Section. The AAV crew operates the Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. The crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crew chief and two crewmen. The crew is led by the vehicle crew chief and operates under the direction of the AA MCM section leader.

- a. Operate the AAV on land and in water with vehicles in section.
- b. Employ the MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.
- c. Employ the Upgunned Weapons Station.
- d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
- e. Perform PMCS on MK-154 LMC Mod 0 equipment.
- F. Operate in a CBRN-E environment.

5004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

SECTION-LEVEL EVENTS			
Event Code	Eval Coded	Event	Page
AAV-GNRY-4001		Conduct Gun Table VII	5-5
AAV-GNRY-4002		Conduct Gun Table VIII	5-6
AAV-GNRY-4003	Yes	Conduct Gun Table IX	5-7
AAV-CMDC-4001	Yes	Support Command Section Operations	5-8
AAV-CBTS-4001	Yes	Support a Section Breach	5-9
AAV-CBTS-4002	Yes	Support Team Breach	5-9
AAV-CSS-4001		Conduct Recovery Operations	5-10
AAV-AMPH-4001	Yes	Conduct Waterborne Operations	5-11
AAV-AMPH-4002	Yes	Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Slow Sinking AAV	5-12
AAV-AMPH-4003		Recover Disabled AAV in the Water	5-13
AAV-TAC-4001	Yes	Conduct a Mechanized Attack	5-13
AAV-TAC-4002	Yes	Support Infantry Defensive Operations	5-14
AAV-TAC-4003		Support a Retrograde	5-15
CREW-LEVEL EVENTS			
AAV-GNRY-3001		Conduct Gun Table I	5-16
AAV-GNRY-3002	Yes	Conduct Gun Table II	5-17
AAV-GNRY-3003		Conduct Gun Table III	5-18

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Section Qualification must be conducted live-fire using full-caliber ammunition. 3. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 4. All Crews must have passed the GST and GT I within the previous three months (6 months for Reserve component). 5. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII. DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this table, not both.

AAV-CMDC-4001: Support Command Section Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters staff.

STANDARD: To provide mechanized combat operations center.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Assist in establishing mobile COC
2. Task organize AAVC7 and AAVP7
3. Advise supported unit on command section employment
4. Employ medium and heavy machineguns
5. Assist supported unit with operating the communications suite system

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2004 1833-CMDC-2008

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2001	1833-CMDC-2002	1833-CMDC-2004
1833-CMDC-2008	AAV-CMDC-3001	AAV-TAC-3001

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 08463A-10 Command Communications System, Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 (AAVC7A1)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event. 2. This event is required for the AAVC7 section only.

AAV-CBTS-4001: Support a Section Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given mobility/counter mobility section of two AAVP7 and two AAVP7 with Mk 154 kits installed, required Combat Engineer support, an area of operations, and higher operation order.

STANDARD: To create two lanes that allows maneuver forces freedom of movement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning
2. Identify type of breach
3. Determine the physical environment
4. Advise the breach force commander
5. Task organize MCM assets
6. Apply breaching fundamentals, SOSR

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2007	AAV-CBTS-3001	AAV-CBTS-3002
AAV-CBTS-3003	AAV-CBTS-3004	AAV-CBTS-3005
AAV-CBTS-4002	AAV-CMDC-3001	AAV-TAC-3001

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
J143 Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	3 rockets per AAV
ML25 Charge, Demolition Linear M59A1	3 charges per AAV
ML26 Charge, Demolition Inert Linear M69	3 charges per AAV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This event is required for the MCM AAV Section only. 2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.

AAV-CBTS-4002: Support a Team Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a Mobility/Counter Mobility Team of one AAVP7 and one AAVP7 with Mk 154 kit installed, required Combat Engineer support, an area of operations and higher operation order.

STANDARD: To create one lane that allows maneuver forces freedom of movement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning
2. Identify type of breach
3. Determine the physical environment
4. Advise the breach force commander
5. Task organize MCM assets
6. Apply breaching fundamentals, SOSR

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2007	AAV-CBTS-3001	AAV-CBTS-3002
AAV-CBTS-3003	AAV-CBTS-3004	AAV-CBTS-3005
AAV-CMDC-3001		

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
J143 Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	3 rockets per AAV
ML25 Charge, Demolition Linear M59A1	3 charges per AAV
ML26 Charge, Demolition Inert Linear M69	3 charges per AAV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This event is required for the MCM AAV Team only. 2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.

AAV-CSS-4001: Conduct Recovery Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a section with a disabled AAV.

STANDARD: To return the AAV to operation or take it to a collection point for repair, evacuation or disposal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Vehicle commanders provide condition, location and circumstances of damage
2. Conduct assessment
3. Recover or repair equipment
4. Destroy or render ineffective all equipment, sensitive items, and weapons when vehicle is determined unsalvageable
5. Provide updates to higher headquarters

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-VOPS-2005 AAV-CMDC-3001 AAV-TAC-3001

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

AAV-AMPH-4001: Conduct Waterborne Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This event is designed to train the section to operate and maneuver in the water, not necessarily to conduct operations with amphibious shipping.

CONDITION: Given a mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To meet all navigation points, land within 50 meters of center beach, and land at a pre-designated time.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Prepare AAVs to launch
2. Launch AAVs into the water
3. Maneuver AAVs into required formations
4. Navigate AAVs
5. Land

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1001 1833-CMDC-1004 1833-CMDC-2001
1833-VOPS-2002

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1003 1833-AMPH-2001 1833-AMPH-2002
AAV-AMPH-3001 AAV-AMPH-3002 AAV-AMPH-3003
AAV-AMPH-3604

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
5. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
6. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Amphibious shipping and infantry are not required to accomplish this event.

AAV-AMPH-4002: Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled / Slow Sinking AAV

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

CONDITION: Given AA section with one disabled AAV.

STANDARD: To evacuate to an operational AAV.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Disabled/sinking AAV alerts unit of distress
2. Move rescue AAV to disabled/sinking AAV and hold position
3. Evacuate and transfer personnel

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1001 1833-VOPS-1002

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1005 1833-AMPH-2001 AAV-AMPH-3001
AAV-AMPH-3003 AAV-AMPH-3604

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-4003: Recover Disabled AAV in the Water

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an AA section with one disabled AAV.

STANDARD: To tow the disabled vehicle ashore or on amphibious shipping.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Position rescue AAV to recover disabled AAV
2. Hook towlines
3. Tow AAV to nearest safe haven
4. Remove tow lines

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1003	1803-AMPH-1004	1833-AMPH-1004
AAV-AMPH-3001	AAV-AMPH-3003	

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

AAV-TAC-4001: Support a Mechanized Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a supported infantry unit, mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To seize the enemy occupied position.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning, preparations, rehearsals and inspections
2. Move to assault position
3. Maneuver to the dismount point
4. Dismount infantry and provide direct fire support
5. Consolidate and re-organize
6. Submit combat reports

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2001	1833-CMDC-2002	1833-CMDC-2004
1833-CMDC-2005	1833-CMDC-2007	1833-CMDC-2008
1833-TAC-2001	AAV-CMDC-3001	AAV-GNRY-3006
AAV-TAC-3001		

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.95 Cavalry Operations
2. FM 3-90.1 AAV and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
4. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

AAV-TAC-4002: Support Infantry Defensive Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To identify the appropriate type of defensive operation, method, and apply defensive fundamentals.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task organize
2. Conduct planning, preparation and inspections

3. Identify and mark primary, alternate and supplementary positions
4. Occupy battle position
5. Produce, receive and forward fire plan sketches and range cards
6. Adhere to communications and signals plan
7. Establish and rehearse final protective fires, counterattack plan and defensive battle drills
8. Establish alert postures
9. Conduct continuing actions
10. Submit combat reports

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2008	1833-GNRY-1009	1833-GNRY-1010
1833-GNRY-2005	1833-TAC-1001	

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CMDC-3001	AAV-GNRY-3006	AAV-TAC-3001
---------------	---------------	--------------

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 AAV and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: A supported infantry unit is required to accomplish this event.

AAV-TAC-4003: Support a Retrograde

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given a mission and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To gain time, preserve forces, avoid contact under undesirable conditions or maneuver the enemy into an unfavorable position.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify type and purpose of retrograde
2. Plan for alternate or successive delaying actions
3. Establish tactical control measures
4. Submit combat reports

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2008	1833-GNRY-1009	1833-GNRY-1010
----------------	----------------	----------------

4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	96 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live fire. 2. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.2. 3. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event.

AAV-GNRY-3004: Conduct Gun Table IV

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table IV is designed to evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array at extended ranges with the M2 from a stationary or moving (short halt/Tactical Control Point) vehicle utilizing the UGWS.

CONDITION: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, given a fully operational AAV, Full-scaled targets (3/4 optional), and allocated ammunition.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
2. Task #1: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7 Engage multiple targets one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets using the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002 AAV-GNRY-3003

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulations platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Simulation will be used to train and evaluate this task. 2. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.2. 3. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event.

AAV-GNRY-3005: Conduct Gun Table V

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table V is designed to evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving (short halt/Tactical Control Point) vehicle utilizing all weapons from the UGWS.

CONDITION: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, given a fully operational armed vehicle, full-scale targets (3/4 optional), and allocated ammunition.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
2. Task #1: Engage multiple targets one stationary one moving utilizing the UGWS
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002 AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	450 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	450 rounds per AAV
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	48 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live fire. 4. 450 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this table, NOT both.

AAV-GNRY-3006: Conduct Gun Table VI

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VI is designed to evaluate the crew on engaging moving and stationary targets using all vehicle weapon systems while in the

defensive or offensive postures.

CONDITION: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, given a fully operational armed AAV, Full-scaled targets, and allocated ammunition.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS
2. Task #1: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the UGWS
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving targets utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3001	AAV-GNRY-3002	AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004	AAV-GNRY-3005	

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	450 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	450 rounds per AAV
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	56 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. Crews will receive an overall qualification rating (Distinguished, Superior, Qualified, Unqualified) for Table VI based on the common scoring model dual qualification criteria(qualified tasks and total crew points)per the MCWP 3-12.2. 4. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live fire. 5. 450 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

AAV-CMDC-3001: Conduct Communications

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 MCT 1.4.1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4 MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

CONDITION: Given a radio.

STANDARD: To transmit and receive messages.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Prepare radios with fill
2. Coordinate with higher for call signs and frequencies
3. Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF) as needed
4. Conduct late net entry as needed
5. Enforce standard radio procedures
6. Enforce radio silence
7. Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM)

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1001	1803-CMDC-1002	1803-CMDC-1003
1803-CMDC-1004	1803-CMDC-1005	1833-CMDC-1001
1833-CMDC-1002	1833-CMDC-1003	1833-CMDC-2001
1833-CMDC-2002	1833-CMDC-2003	1833-CMDC-2004
2841-CMDC-2001		

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCRP 3-40.3B Radio Operator's Handbook
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

AAV-VOPS-3001: Conduct Demolition of AAV

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.12.1 MCT 1.4.1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4 MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an AAV.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use of the AAV and/or its critical components.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine time available
2. Zeroize communication equipment
3. Determine the items to be destroyed
4. Remove salvageable items

5. Determine methods of destruction available
6. Apply procedures of destruction

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-VOPS-1005 1833-VOPS-2006

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
 3. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

AAV-CBTS-3001: Install Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given AAVP7, 5-ton capable lifting source and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: To prepare Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System for operation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Follow installation procedures
3. Conduct operational test

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1833-CBTS-2001

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2001 1833-CBTS-2002

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is required only for members of the MCM platoon.

AAV-CBTS-3002: Load Ordnance

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: To prepare system for deployment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Follow pre-deployment checks
3. Follow rocket motor loading procedures
4. Follow line charge fusing procedures
5. Follow line charge loading procedures
6. Connect rocket bridle cables
7. Follow electrical connection of the line charge
8. Follow electrical connection of the rocket
9. Perform rocket thrust positive connection

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2001 1833-CBTS-2002 1833-CBTS-2003

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is required only for members of the MCM platoon.

AAV-CBTS-3003: Deploy Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given loaded munitions and area of operations.

STANDARD: To reduce an obstacle.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Operate electrically
3. Operate manually
4. Follow ordnance malfunction procedures

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2001 1833-CBTS-2002 1833-CBTS-2003
1833-CBTS-2004

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
3. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
J143 Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	3 rockets per AAV
ML25 Charge, Demolition Linear M59A1	3 charges per AAV
ML26 Charge, Demolition Inert Linear M69	3 charges per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17820 Engineer Qualification Range,
Non-Standardized

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This event is required only for members of the MCM platoon. 2. Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement.

AAV-CBTS-3004: Offload Ordnance

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: To clear system of munitions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Follow disarming line charges procedures
3. Follow unloading rocket procedures
4. Follow line charge defusing procedures
5. Follow off-loading line charge container procedures

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2001	1833-CBTS-2002	1833-CBTS-2003
1833-CBTS-2004	1833-CBTS-2005	

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
3. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is required only for members of the MCM platoon.

AAV-CBTS-3005: Remove Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.4.1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, 5-ton capable lifting source and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: To remove system from an AAVP7A1 and stow it.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Follow removal procedures

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2001	1833-CBTS-2002	1833-CBTS-2003
1833-CBTS-2004	1833-CBTS-2005	1833-CBTS-2006

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
 2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
-

AAV-AMPH-3001: Employ Assault Amphibious Vehicle in Water

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To operate in water.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Prepare the vehicle for waterborne operation
2. Transition AAV from land into the water
3. Maneuver with jet propulsion
4. Maneuver with track propulsion
5. Transition AAV out of the water

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1833-AMPH-1001

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1004	1833-AMPH-1003	1833-AMPH-1003
1833-AMPH-2002		

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is intended for both calm water
and surf zone operations.

AAV-AMPH-3002: Embark/Debark AAV On/Off Amphibious Shipping

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an AAV as part of an AAV section or platoon, and an
amphibious ship at sea.

STANDARD: To recover aboard and launch from amphibious shipping.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Prepare AAV to be recovered aboard ship
2. Follow recovery procedures
3. Conduct one static recovery during day
4. Conduct one static recovery during night
5. Conduct one dynamic recovery during day
6. Conduct one dynamic recovery during night
7. Secure AAV in well deck
8. Prepare AAV for launch
9. Follow launch procedures
10. Conduct one static launch during day
11. Conduct one static launch during night
12. Conduct one dynamic launch during day
13. Conduct one dynamic launch during night

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-AMPH-3001

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1004 1833-AMPH-1003

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family
of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 signal per AAV
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 signal per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This is considered crew certification.

AAV-AMPH-3003: Conduct Vehicle Emergency Procedures Afloat

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

CONDITION: Given an AAV with dead engine or sinking.

STANDARD: To evacuate and/or recover AAV.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct vehicle commander emergency procedures afloat
2. Conduct driver emergency procedures afloat
3. Conduct crewman emergency procedures afloat

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: 1833-AMPH-1003

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-1004	1833-AMPH-1005	1833-AMPH-2001
----------------	----------------	----------------

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1002	1803-AMPH-1003	1803-AMPH-1004
1803-AMPH-1005	1833-AMPH-1001	1833-AMPH-1004
1833-AMPH-1005	1833-AMPH-1006	1833-AMPH-2001
1833-AMPH-2002		

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	2 per crew
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	2 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-3004: Egress the AAV

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 4 months

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AAV.

STANDARD: To return all crew and passengers to the surface of the water.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Order egress, egress, egress
2. Crew and embarked personnel unfasten seatbelts
3. Crew and designated personnel unlock hatches
4. Crew and embarked personnel exit the AAV
5. Account for crew and embarked personnel

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1005 1833-AMPH-1006

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This task shall be trained using the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). Egress drills can be conducted on AAV while parked at the ramp or during field exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than SVET.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. The Shallow Water Initial Memory Mechanical Exit Release (SWIMMER) and the Shallow Water Egress Trainer (SWET) is utilized by the Naval Survival Training Institute (NSTI) as part of their egress training continuum to increase Marines comfort in the water as well as their proficiency in SVET and AAV egress. SWIMMER and SWET are available at all 8 NSTI training sites, but are not currently utilized by the Marine Corps. If possible, unit training shall include SWIMMER and SWET training prior to using the SVET. 2. Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

AAV-TAC-3001: Employ Assault Amphibious Vehicle on Land

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.4.1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4
MCT 5.3.2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: Given area of operation.

STANDARD: To operate within maneuver space.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct operations checks
2. Apply principles of terrain driving
3. Apply movement technique
4. Apply movement formation
5. Adhere to tactical control measures
6. Conduct actions on contact
7. Submit combat reports

CHAINED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2007 1833-CMDC-2008 1833-VOPS-1001

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1001	1803-CMDC-1003	1803-CMDC-1004
1803-CSS-1002	1803-TAC-1001	1803-TAC-1002
1803-VOPS-1002	1803-VOPS-1004	1833-CMDC-1001
1833-CMDC-1002	1833-CMDC-1003	1833-CMDC-1004
1833-CMDC-2001	1833-CMDC-2002	1833-CSS-2003
1833-TAC-1001	1833-TAC-2001	1833-VOPS-1001
1833-VOPS-1003	1833-VOPS-1004	1833-VOPS-1005
1833-VOPS-1009	1833-VOPS-1010	1833-VOPS-2003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 AAV and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

MOS 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE	6000	6-2
EVENT CODING.	6001	6-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.	6002	6-2
PREREQUISITES	6003	6-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES.	6004	6-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.	6005	6-6
1000-LEVEL EVENTS	6006	6-8

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

MOS 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

6000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Officer. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident/distance learning PME.

6001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1802" indicating that the event is for AAV Officers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for AAV Officers are:

GNRY - Gunnery	CMDC - Command and Control
VOPS - Vehicle Operations	TAC - Tactical Operation
CSS - Combat Service Support	AMPH - Amphibious Operations

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

6002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

6003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine AAV Officer will have completed The Basic School (TBS), Quantico, VA and Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibious School, Camp Pendleton, CA.

6004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The AAV Officer will complete the Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the AAV Officer will conduct additional Level 2000 training in an

Assault Amphibian unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

2. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Platoon Commander. Responsible for the vehicles and crews in an AA platoon. When he is the senior AA officer assigned to an infantry battalion, he also serves as a special staff officer to the infantry battalion commander. The primary duty of the AA platoon commander is to advise the infantry company commander on the use of AAVs in support of the assigned mission. The AA platoon commander directs the maneuver and fires of his platoon in accordance with the intent of the infantry company commander. The AA platoon commander occupies the weapon station of the AAV that is utilized by the infantry company commander as his command vehicle. During water operations the AA platoon commander maintains control of the tactical movement of the AA unit.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support company training objectives.
- (2) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his platoon.
- (3) Makes operational planning recommendations to the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.
- (4) Manages the preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts on all vehicles and all associated collateral equipment.
- (5) Employs proper movement techniques and formations.
- (6) Employs operational safety procedures.
- (7) Employs vehicle and unit fires in support of mission and in self-defense.
- (8) Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements of AA unit.
- (9) Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
- (10) Leads AA platoon and embarked personnel in amphibious operations.

3. BILLET: Assault Amphibian Mine Countermeasure Platoon Commander. Responsible for the vehicles and crews in the AA Mobility/Counter-Mobility (MCM) platoon. The MCM platoon commander supports the Ground Combat Element with breaching capability. The MCM platoon commander leads two sections of Marines that crew AAVP7A1s with and without MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kits.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support company training objectives.
- (2) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his platoon.
- (3) Manages the preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

- (4) Advises supported unit commander on employment of unit and MK 1 Mod 0.
- (5) Employs operational safety procedures.
- (6) Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements of AA unit.
- (7) Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

4. BILLET: AA Company Executive Officer. Second most senior 1803 in the AA company. Assumes command in commander's absence.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Makes operational planning recommendations to company commander on unit training and operations.
- (2) Oversees unit training and operations.
- (3) Oversees range operations.
- (4) Oversees unit logistical support and requirements.
- (5) Trains AA platoon commanders in performance of duties.
- (6) Oversees the conduct and supervises ancillary training events.

5. BILLET: AA Company Commander. The AA company commander works for the commanding officer of the supported infantry regiment or battalion and becomes a special staff officer to the supported infantry commander. The AA company commander leads one or more AA platoons and a maintenance platoon. He is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and all associated collateral gear including additional support equipment.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Directs the logistics support organic to the AA company in support of his AAVs.
- (2) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his company.
- (3) Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.
- (4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical and maintenance requirements for AA unit.
- (5) Employs operational safety procedures.
- (6) Trains and supervises platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support battalion training objectives.
- (7) Responsible for overall preventative and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.
- (8) Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

6. BILLET: Headquarters and Service Company Commander. The headquarters and service (H&S) company commander provides the AA battalion commander the means to effect command and control of the battalion. Through his subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S company commander provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply, and other service support functions to the AA battalion commander.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Serves as headquarters commander for AA battalion.
- (2) Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.
- (3) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
- (4) Employs operational safety procedures.
- (5) Responsible for the overall preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.
- (6) Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
- (7) Supervises maintenance related activities of AA unit.
- (8) Maintains the welfare and discipline of a company.
- (9) Coordinates the staff sections in the performance of tasks that support battalion training objectives.

7. BILLET: Assistant Operations Officer. Junior 1803 officer in battalion operations section. Assists operations officer in duties.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Serves as watch officer in battalion COC.
- (2) Assists the operations officer in supervising unit and personnel training.
- (3) Assists the operations officer with coordinating with naval personnel for amphibious operations.
- (4) Monitors the battalion TEEP.

8. BILLET: Battalion Operations Officer. Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion training and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training and tactical operations of an assault amphibian battalion.
- (2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support of units.
- (3) Responsible for determining priorities for allocation of personnel, weapons, equipment and ammunition.
- (4) Makes operational planning recommendations to the battalion commander.
- (5) Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

9. BILLET: Battalion Logistics Officer. Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion logistical requirements and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Assumes staff responsibility for determining logistical requirements, support, and operations for an AA battalion.
- (2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising logistical support of AA units.
- (3) Makes operational planning recommendations to the battalion commander.
- (4) Coordinates with Naval personnel for embarkation of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

10. BILLET: Battalion Executive Officer. Second most senior 1803 officer in the battalion. Assumes command in battalion commander's absence. Responsible for managing and coordinating the battalion staff and administrative tasks.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Coordinates all actions of the battalion staff.
- (2) Supervises staff planning process.
- (3) Ensures battalion reports are made as required to higher and adjacent commanders.
- (4) Maintains information flow to battalion commander.

11. BILLET: Battalion Commanding Officer. The AA battalion commander serves as a special staff officer to the Commanding General of the Marine Division. The battalion commander also directs the maintenance and logistic trains organic to the battalion to support operations as directed by the Commanding

General of the Marine Division. The assault amphibian battalion has the ability to function as a maneuver element headquarters when provided augmentation from higher headquarters.

a. Core Capabilities

- (1) Advises supported unit commander on employment of AA unit.
- (2) Responsible for the vehicle preventive and corrective maintenance.
- (3) Responsible for the training of personnel in the performance of tasks which support division training objectives.
- (4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
- (5) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the battalion.
- (6) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
- (7) Directs organic combat training and logistical operations in support of subordinate units.
- (8) Leads assault amphibian battalion as an independent maneuver element.

6005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL

Event Code	Event	Page
------------	-------	------

1803-GNRY-1001	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons	6-8
1803-GNRY-1002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station	6-8
1803-GNRY-1003	Operate Upgunned Weapons Station	6-9
1803-GNRY-1004	Set Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station	6-10
1803-GNRY-1005	Set Headspace and Adjust Timing	6-10
1803-GNRY-1006	Install/Remove Weapons	6-11
1803-GNRY-1007	Conduct Minor Boresighting	6-11
1803-GNRY-1008	Load/Unload Weapons	6-12
1803-GNRY-1009	Prepare Fire Plan Sketch	6-12
1803-GNRY-1010	Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific threat vehicles	6-13
1803-GNRY-1011	Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station	6-14
1803-GNRY-1012	Engage Targets	6-15
1803-GNRY-1013	Control Distribution of Fires	6-16
1803-GNRY-1014	Conduct Failure to Fire Procedures	6-16
1803-GNRY-1015	Conduct Gunnery Skills Test	6-17
1803-GNRY-1016	Perform individual actions as AAV commander for Gun Table I	6-18
1803-GNRY-1017	Perform the engagement process	6-18
1803-GNRY-1018	Load/Unload M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	6-19
1803-GNRY-1019	Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	6-20
1803-GNRY-1020	Perform immediate action procedures for an M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	6-20
1803-CMDC-1001	Communicate Using Visual Signals	6-21
1803-CMDC-1002	Respond to Signals	6-22
1803-CMDC-1003	Conduct Internal/External Communications	6-22
1803-CMDC-1004	Control Radio Communications	6-23
1803-CMDC-1005	Employ Command Communication System	6-23
1803-CMDC-1006	Submit Reports	6-24
1803-CMDC-1007	Conduct Operational Safety	6-24
1803-CMDC-1008	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield	6-25
1803-CMDC-1009	Advise Supported Unit Commander on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment	6-26
1803-VOPS-1001	Conduct Operational Checks	6-26
1803-VOPS-1002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	6-27
1803-VOPS-1003	Conduct Emergency Maintenance Procedures on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Subsystems	6-27
1803-VOPS-1004	Conduct Land Tow	6-28
1803-VOPS-1005	Conduct Demolition	6-28
1803-VOPS-1006	Install Special Mission Kit	6-29
1803-CSS-1001	Monitor Maintenance Reports	6-30
1803-CSS-1002	Conduct Vehicle Inspection	6-30
1803-CSS-1003	Conduct Recovery Operations	6-31
1803-AMPH-1001	Embark and Debark amphibious shipping	6-31
1803-AMPH-1002	Evacuate Embarked Personnel	6-32
1803-AMPH-1003	Conduct Water Tow	6-33
1803-AMPH-1004	Prepare AAV unit for Amphib ops	6-33

1803-AMPH-1005	Egress the AAV	6-34
1803-TAC-1001	Camouflage an Assault Amphibious Vehicle	6-35
1803-TAC-1002	Conduct Operations in Special Terrain	6-35

6006. 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

1803-GNRY-1001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Mk 19, M2 or M240 machinegun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition and ready for its primary mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the machineguns
2. Disassemble the weapon
3. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components
4. Report worn or defective parts
5. Assemble the weapon
6. Perform function check

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
3. TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
4. TM 08670A/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

1803-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Ungunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given collateral material and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition and ready for its primary mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Apply PMCS to turret exterior
2. Apply PMCS to turret interior
3. Lubricate turret components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1803-GNRY-1003: Operate Uppunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle.

STANDARD: To ensure readiness of all components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Complete pre-operation checklist
2. Manipulate electrical components
3. Manipulate manual components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Turret Trainer (AAV-TT)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations will be used as a precursor to live fire training in order to help maximize and enhance the live fire training event.

1803-GNRY-1004: Set Inhibit Zone for the Uppgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, inhibit zone aligning tool and reference.

STANDARD: To keep the vehicle and personnel out of the line of fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone
2. Establish the inhibit zone elevation
3. Establish Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths
4. Establish Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths
5. Reset inhibit points if applicable

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool

1803-GNRY-1005: Set Headspace and Adjust Timing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2, and collateral equipment, and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare weapon for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set headspace
2. Adjust timing

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference

1803-GNRY-1006: Install/Remove Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given machineguns, Uppunned Weapons Station, crew and reference.

STANDARD: Within 20 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install Mk19
2. Install M2
3. Remove Mk 19
4. Remove M2

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
 2. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1803-GNRY-1007: Conduct Minor Boresighting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew, machineguns, boresighting kits and reference.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment, within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct boresight procedures for M36E_
2. Conduct retention procedures

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1D Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
3. TM 8F419D1/4 Upgunned Weapons Station M36E Thermal Sighting System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1803-GNRY-1008: Load/Unload Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, ammunition and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare Upgunned Weapons Station to fire and clear weapons of ammunition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Load Ammunition into the Mk 19 and M2
2. UnLoad Ammunition from the Mk 19 and M2

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	200 rounds per AAV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	96 rounds per AAV

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Turret Trainer (AAV-TT)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test and Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1009: Prepare Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV Platoon in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To provide overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Combine section fire plan sketches firing data
2. Illustrate Vehicles and Firing Data
3. Illustrate dead space
4. Illustrate terrain
5. Annotate orientation data

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

1803-GNRY-1010: Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific threat vehicles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a classroom present 20 combat vehicles.

STANDARD: To name 18 out of 20 vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify characteristics of the vehicle
2. Identify the type of vehicle
3. Identify armament of vehicle
4. Identify maximum range (threat) of vehicle weapons

REFERENCES:

1. ROC-V Recognition of Combat Vehicles

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. 2. A minimum of four of these slides must be thermal signatures (if unit is equipped with thermal optics). A minimum of five U.S. vehicles and helicopters (mixed; no more than three helicopters per test) will be selected from U.S. armored vehicles and combat helicopters currently in use. 3. All U.S. equipment must be identified correctly to receive a GO rating. 4. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1803-GNRY-1011: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Boresighted Assault Amphibious Vehicle, ammunition and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To place center of beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Zero the sight to the Mk 19 machine gun
2. Zero the M2 machine gun to the sight

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	8 rounds per Marine
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	8 rounds per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This Task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables. 2. Ammunition is either TP or

HE DP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). This Task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1012: Engage Targets

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Designed to evaluate the Platoon Commanders ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle (short halt/tactical control point).

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with full sized targets.

STANDARD: To score a minimum of 70 points on 70% of the engagements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. One Defensive Engagement: Day and Night
2. One Offensive Engagement: Day and Night
3. One Short Halt or Traffic Control Point: Day OR Night
4. One Short Range Machine Gun Engagement: Day OR Night
5. One CBRN Engagement: Day and Night
6. One Short-Range Engagement: Day OR Night
7. One Long Range Engagement: Day OR Night

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	160 rounds per Marine
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	160 rounds per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. 2. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification. 3.

Ammunition is either TP or HE DP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 4. Scenario Development, vehicle posture, and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLS) in MCWP 3-12.2

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Advanced Gunner (9-10) Qualified Gunner (7-8)
Unqualified (0-6)

1803-GNRY-1013: Control Distribution of Fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills of the Platoon Commander gunnery that demonstrates engagement skills of a platoon.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a maneuver element and an operations order.

STANDARD: To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct Gun Table X
2. Conduct Gun Table XI
3. Conduct Gun Table XII (Qualification)

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	300 rounds per AAV
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	64 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The MCWP 3-12.2 provides guidance for Platoon Gunnery Tables X-XII Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803-GNRY-1014: Conduct Failure to Fire Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with weapons installed.

STANDARD: In sequence within 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform Immediate Action on Mk 19
2. Perform Immediate Action on Mk 19 with a jammed bolt
3. Perform Immediate Action on the M2 machine gun

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test and Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1015: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and all associated training devices.

STANDARD: In accordance with ST 3-20.21-1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles and Theater Threat Vehicles
2. Identify Ammunition

3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on MK19 40mm Machinegun
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M2 HB caliber Machine Gun
5. Misfire Procedures Turret Mounted Weapons
6. Load/Unload Turret Mounted Weapons

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. ST 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

1803-GNRY-1016: Perform individual actions as AAV commander for Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, associated equipment and crew.

STANDARD: In accordance with MCWP3-12.2.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills
2. Perform crew roll over Drills
3. Send, Receive radio reports
4. Send, Receive digital reports
5. Evacuate an injured crewman
6. Boresight an AAV
7. Mount and Remove Turret Mounted Weapons

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. ST 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This is a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803-GNRY-1017: Perform the engagement process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To destroy or neutralize a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect a threat
2. Identify a threat
3. Decide on a course of action
4. Execute engagement
5. Assess target effects

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAV-TT

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This task will be executed using simulation. 2. This task will be performed to standard during Gunnery tables.

1803-GNRY-1018: Load/Unload M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To prepare the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn the vehicle and turret power OFF
2. Turn the grenade launcher switches OFF
3. Insert the grenades into the M257
4. Rotate 90 degrees
5. Unload the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher
6. Stow grenades

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8 grenades per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

1803-GNRY-1019: Fire the M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To obscure the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the situation
2. Orient the turret/vehicle in the direction where the smoke is needed
3. Announce "grenade launcher"
4. The crew secures all hatches
5. Arm Smoke Grenade launcher switch
6. Announce "fire"
7. Fire the grenade launcher(s)
8. Safe weapon

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulation will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803-GNRY-1020: Perform immediate action procedures for an M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To correct failure to fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Wait 10-20 seconds for second attempt to fire
2. Smoke Grenade arming switch to OFF
3. Check smoke grenades are firmly seated in discharge tube
4. Attempt to fire
5. Disposal of misfired smoke grenades
6. Any misfired grenade must remain in discharge tube for at least 4 Minutes

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Uppgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8 grenades per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Only qualified ordnance personnel can remove misfired smoke grenades.

1803-CMDC-1001: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew and an operating area.

STANDARD: To control the movement of vehicle(s).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Employ day ground guiding signals
2. Employ night ground guiding signals
3. Employ day tactical hand and arm signals
4. Employ night tactical hand and arm signals

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Special equipment is required for night operations (i.e. cone lights, chemical light sticks, etc.).

1803-CMDC-1002: Respond to Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, pyrotechnics and markers.

STANDARD: To control Assault Amphibious Vehicle movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Respond to standard beach signals/markers
2. Respond to standard naval signals/markers
3. Respond to standard tactical signals/markers
4. Respond to standard logistical signals/markers

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

1803-CMDC-1003: Conduct Internal/External Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, and radio net.

STANDARD: To communicate with crew and other elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman's (CVC) helmet
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier
5. Operate the receiver/transmitters
6. Operate the position location systems
7. Secure communication equipment from operation

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 11-5820-1172-13 Operator and Maintenance Manual, Defense Advanced GPS Receiver (DAGR) Satellite Signals Navigation Set AN/PSN-13
3. TM 11-5820-890-10-6 Operator's Pocket Guide for SINCGARS Ground ICOM Radios

1803-CMDC-1004: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious unit, and Communications Electronics Operating Instructions.

STANDARD: To enforce voice radio procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all elements have the data and COMSEC
2. Update Frequency Hopping data using electronic remote fill (ERF)
3. Enforce standard radio procedures
4. Assign local unit call signs and frequencies
5. Enforce radio silence
6. Determine the presence of electronic countermeasures

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
2. MCRP 6-22C RADIO OPERATOR'S HANDBOOK
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1803-CMDC-1005: Employ Command Communication System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7A1.

STANDARD: To ensure that the system is ready for the using unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Follow start-up procedures for communications suite
2. Troubleshoot the communications suite
3. Assist embarked staff with configuring and operating the communications suite
4. Secure equipment after operation

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. TM 07268C-10/1 Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 RAM/RS (AAVC7A1 RAM/RS) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
-

1803-CMDC-1006: Submit Reports

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given report formats and a situation requiring tactical or administrative information.

STANDARD: To inform higher headquarters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine type of report (administrative, logistical, operational and amphibious)
2. Generate report
3. Forward report

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 3. MCRP 3-13.1A The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC)
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1007: Conduct Operational Safety

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle unit.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct mission analysis and assess the situation
2. Develop safety plans
3. Implement safety plans
4. Supervise implementation of safety plans

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
 4. TM 10004A-10/1D Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1803-CMDC-1008: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order and an area of operations.

STANDARD: To evaluate enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities and probable courses of action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Define the battlefield environment
2. Describe the battlefield's effect on operations
3. Evaluate the threat
4. Determine threat COA
5. Advise supported unit leader on AAV employment considerations based on IPB products

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803-CMDC-1009: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mission and a command relationship with a supported unit.

STANDARD: To assist with planning by providing estimates of supportability and subject matter expertise.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assist the supported unit leader with mission analysis and planning
2. Task organize the AA unit
3. Brief the vehicle AA units limitations/capabilities
4. Brief the AA units offensive and defensive considerations
5. Brief the AA units amphibious employment considerations
6. Brief C7 capabilities/limitations
7. Determine and address the logistical requirements
8. Brief the vehicle safety guidelines

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
 3. MCRP 3-13.1A The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC)
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 3-40.1 MAGTF Command and Control
-

1803-VOPS-1001: Conduct Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, crew, and the references.

STANDARD: To prevent mechanical malfunctions, ensuring that the system is fully capable to conduct combat missions in support of unit readiness requirements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify completion of pre-operation checklist
2. Verify completion of during operation checklist
3. Verify completion of at-halt operation checklist
4. Verify completion of after operation checklist
5. Verify completion of pre-water checklist

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1803-VOPS-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, collateral material and reference.

STANDARD: To maintain vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure PMCS of the vehicle components are completed
2. Ensure PMCS of the Upgunned Weapons Station is completed
3. Ensure PMCS of the communication equipment is completed
4. Ensure PMCS of the special mission kits are completed

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1803-VOPS-1003: Conduct Emergency Maintenance Procedures on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Subsystems

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given leaking contact cooler or hydraulic system and reference.

STANDARD: To restore the vehicle to an operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify completion of contact cooler bypass procedures
2. Verify completion of emergency closing of the plenums

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

1803-VOPS-1004: Conduct Land Tow

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled Assault Amphibious Vehicle and required vehicles with crew, equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To move the disabled AAV.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing
2. Tow using tow bar
3. Tow using tow cables

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy
Forces

1803-VOPS-1005: Conduct Demolition of AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an AAV.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use of the AAV and/or its critical components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the criteria to conduct demolition
2. Remove salvageable items
3. Zeroize communications equipment
4. Determine methods of destruction available
5. Determine the items to be destroyed
6. Destroy identified equipment

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
 3. TM 10004A-10/1D Ungunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1803-VOPS-1006: Determine/select use of AAV Special Mission Kits

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 36 months

DESCRIPTION: Assault Amphibious Vehicle Special Mission Kits include: Enhanced Appliqué Armor Kit, Litter Kit, Mk 154 Linear Mine Clearing Kit, Winterization Kit and Visor Kit.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle and references.

STANDARD: To enhance vehicles capabilities/survivability.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct mission analysis
2. Assess the capabilities/limitations of each special mission kit
3. Identify the appropriate special mission kit to use
4. Determine the time and resources required to install/remove kit
5. Determine the impact on mission with and without kit installed

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
 2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures
 3. UM 4790-5 MIMMS AIS, Field Maintenance Procedures
- 1803-CSS-1003:** Conduct Recovery Operations
-

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled Assault Amphibious Vehicle, and additional AAVP7s or an AAVR7 with crews and equipment.

STANDARD: To recover the disabled Assault Amphibious Vehicle and position it for repair or towing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify tactical/non-tactical conditions
2. Identify types of assets required
3. Prepare disabled vehicle and assets
4. Execute recovery procedures

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Use of an R7 for Recovery operations is optional.

1803-AMPH-1001: Embark and Debark amphibious shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle platoon and an amphibious ship.

STANDARD: To transfer personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct planning
2. Coordinate with ships crew
3. Perform embarkation procedures
4. Supervise vehicle dogging procedures
5. Supervise pre-water operations preparation and undogging procedures
6. Perform debarkation procedures

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 C Wet Well Operations Manual
3. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
4. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping required to accomplish this task.

1803-AMPH-1002: Evacuate Embarked Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given distressed waterborne Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew.

STANDARD: To prevent injury or loss of life while executing steps in sequence.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Follow vehicle commander emergency procedures afloat
2. Supervise driver emergency procedures afloat
3. Supervise crewman emergency procedures afloat
4. Perform water survival techniques

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17330 Covered Training Area

1803-AMPH-1003: Conduct Water Tow

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV in the water, an operational AAV in the water, crews, and equipment.

STANDARD: To recover the disabled vehicle and return it to ship or shore.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the environment/situation
2. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing
3. Prepare towing vehicle
4. Position vehicles
5. Tow disabled vehicle

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1803-AMPH-1004: Prepare AAV unit for Amphib ops

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Assault Amphibious platoon and amphibious mission.

STANDARD: To determine go/no go criteria for Assault Amphibious Vehicle amphibious operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct operations planning
2. Coordinate and deconflict operations area
3. Complete Surf Observation report
4. Complete Modified Surf Index
5. Submit reports
6. Supervise completion of pre-water operations checklists
7. Supervise splash team procedures

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3840.1B Joint Surf Manual
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

1803-AMPH-1005: Egress the AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 4 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AAV.

STANDARD: To exit the AAV and reach the surface of the water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Unfasten seatbelt
2. Unlock assigned hatch
3. Employ life support equipment as required
4. Exit vehicle
5. Swim to surface

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. TM 07268B-10/1D Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 (AAVC7A1)
Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This task shall be trained using the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). Egress drills should be conducted on AAV while parked at the ramp or during field exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than SVET.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

1803-TAC-1001: Camouflage an Assault Amphibious Vehicle

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, crew and equipment.

STANDARD: To avoid enemy observation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare camouflage system
2. Employ camouflage system
3. Stow camouflage system

REFERENCES:

1. TM 5-1080-200-10 Lightweight Camouflage Screen System and Support System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803-TAC-1002: Conduct Operations in Special Terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Assault Amphibian platoon, area of operations and an operation order.

STANDARD: To exploit vehicle capabilities within environmental limitations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Operate in jungle environment
2. Conduct riverine operations
3. Execute a river crossing
4. Operate in urban terrain
5. Operate in desert environment
6. Operate in mountainous terrain
7. Operate in cold weather

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

MOS 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENT

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE.	7000	7-2
EVENT CODING	7001	7-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	7002	7-2
PREREQUISITES	7003	7-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	7004	7-2
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL.	7005	7-8
2000-LEVEL EVENTS.	7006	7-10
1000-LEVEL EVENTS.	7007	7-35

AAV T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

MOS 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENT

7000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Crewman. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident career progression training (Assault Amphibian Unit Leader Course)/distance learning PME.

7001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1833" indicating that the event is for AAV Crewmen.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for AAV Crewmen are:

GNRY - Gunnery	CMDC - Command and Control
VOPS - Vehicle Operations	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	AMPH - Amphibious Operations
TAC - Tactical Operation	

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

7002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

7003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine 1833 AAV Crewman will have completed the Assault Amphibian Crewman Course before reporting in at AAV Bn.

7004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The AAV Crewman will complete the Assault Amphibian Crewman Course, Assault Amphibious School, Camp Pendleton, CA.

Upon graduation, the AAV Crewman will conduct additional Level 2000 training in an Assault Amphibian unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

2. BILLET: Crewman, AAVP7. Junior 1833 Crewman on the AAV.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Executes Vehicle Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.
- (2) Drives AAV.
- (3) Assist Vehicle Commander with acquiring targets.
- (4) Assists in vehicle operational checks of AAV.
- (5) Assists with Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services on AAV.
- (6) Assists in embarking and debarking of the infantry.
- (7) Maintains good order and discipline in the troop compartment.
- (8) Warns of violations to the watertight integrity of the hull.
- (9) Assists embarked personnel in vehicle evacuation.
- (10) Serves as assistant gunner to the Vehicle Commander.
- (11) Maintains vehicle security.

3. BILLET: Vehicle Commander, AAVP7. Senior 1833 Crewman on the AAV. The Vehicle Commander leads a crew of two and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVP7A1 and all associated collateral gear. The Vehicle Commander operates the Upgunned Weapons Station.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for AAV crewman.
- (2) Responsible for embarked personnel.
- (3) Maintains vehicle administrative documents.
- (4) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.
- (5) Employs Upgunned Weapons Station

4. BILLET: Section Leader, AAVP7. Senior 1833 Crewman in the AAV Section with three or more vehicles. The Section Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The Section Leader is positioned in the Upgunned Weapons Station. During water operations, either in the ocean or river, the Assault Amphibian Section Leader maintains control of the tactical movement of the Assault Amphibian section.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for AAV crewman within section.
- (2) Responsible for embarked personnel within section.
- (3) Audits section's administrative documents.
- (4) Executes Platoon Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV section.
- (5) Employs section's Upgunned Weapons Stations in direct fire role.
- (6) Advises supported unit commander.

5. BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, Assault Amphibian Platoon. Senior 1833 and second in command of the Assault Amphibian Platoon. Positioned in the Upgunned Weapons Station of the platoon's logistics vehicle. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the Assault Amphibian Platoon Commander on training, welfare, administrative functions and tactical employment of the platoon.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for AAV crewman within platoon.
- (2) Responsible for vehicles and collateral equipment within platoon.
- (3) Audits administrative documents and assists in all maintenance management functions of the platoon.
- (4) Employs Upgunned Weapons Stations.
- (5) Advises supported unit commander.
- (6) Assumes command in Platoon Commanders absence.
- (7) Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and platoon.
- (8) Coordinates logistical support for Assault Amphibian platoon.
- (9) Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

6. BILLET: Crewman, AAVC7. Junior 1833 Crewman on the AAV.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Executes Vehicle Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAVC7.
- (2) Drives AAV.
- (3) Assist Vehicle Commander with acquiring targets.
- (4) Assists in vehicle operational checks of AAV.
- (5) Assists with Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services on AAV.
- (6) Assists in embarking and debarking of the infantry.
- (7) Warns of violations to the watertight integrity of the hull.
- (8) Assists embarked personnel in vehicle evacuation.
- (9) Serves as assistant gunner to the Vehicle Commander.
- (10) Maintains vehicle security.

7. BILLET: Vehicle Commander, AAVC7. Senior 1833 Crewman on the AAVC7. The Vehicle Commander leads a crew of two and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVC7A1 and all associated collateral gear. The Vehicle Commander station mounts the defensive medium machine gun.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for AAV crewman.
- (2) Responsible for embarked personnel.
- (3) Maintains vehicle administrative documents.
- (4) Executes Section Leader's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.
- (5) Employs Medium Machine Gun in defense of vehicle.

8. BILLET: Section Leader, Assault Amphibian Command Section. Senior 1833 Crewman in the AAV Section with two or more vehicles, with at least one of the vehicles an AAVC7. The Section Leader leads all vehicle crews and is

responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for AAV crewman within section.
- (2) Responsible for embarked personnel within section.
- (3) Audits section's administrative documents.
- (4) Executes supported unit Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV Command section.
- (5) Employs section's Uppgunned Weapons Stations and medium machine guns in defensive role.
- (6) Advises supported unit commander.

9. BILLET: Crewman, Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. Junior 1833 Crewman on the AAV.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Executes Vehicle Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV.
- (2) Drives AAV.
- (3) Assist Vehicle Commander with acquiring targets.
- (4) Assists in vehicle operational checks of AAV.
- (5) Assists with AAV Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services.
- (6) Warns of violations to the watertight integrity of the hull.
- (7) Serves as assistant gunner to the Vehicle Commander.
- (8) Maintains vehicle security.
- (9) Assists in deploying Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.

10. BILLET: Vehicle Commander, Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. Senior 1833 Crewman on the AAV with Mk 154 installed. The Vehicle Commander leads a crew of two and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVP7A1 and all associated collateral gear. The Vehicle Commander operates the Uppgunned Weapons Station.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for the AAV crewmen.
- (2) Responsible for Mk 154 Mod 0 kit.
- (3) Maintains vehicle administrative documents.
- (4) Executes Section or Team Leader's commands related to employment and function of the Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.
- (5) Employs Uppgunned Weapons Station

11. BILLET: Team Leader, Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. Senior 1833 Crewman in the AAV Team with four or more vehicles, at least two vehicles have Mk 154 installed. The Team Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The Team Leader is positioned in the Uppgunned Weapons Station. During water operations, either in the ocean or river, the Assault Amphibian Team Leader maintains control of the tactical movement of the Assault Amphibian team.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for the AAV crewmen within team.
- (2) Responsible for any embarked personnel.
- (3) Audits team's administrative documents.
- (4) Executes Breach Force Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV Team.
- (5) Employs team's Uppgunned Weapons Stations.
- (6) Advises supported unit commander.

12. BILLET: Section Leader, Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. Senior 1833 crewman in the AAV Section with eight or more vehicles, at least four vehicles have Mk 154 installed. The Section Leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The Section Leader is positioned in the Uppgunned Weapons Station. During water operations, either in the ocean or river, the Assault Amphibian Section Leader maintains control of the tactical movement of the Assault Amphibian section.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for AAV crewman within section.
- (2) Responsible for embarked personnel within section.
- (3) Audits section's administrative documents.
- (4) Executes Breach Force Commander's commands related to employment and function of the AAV section.
- (5) Employs section's Uppgunned Weapons Stations.
- (6) Advises supported unit commander.

13. BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, Assault Amphibian Mine Countermeasure Platoon. Senior 1833 and second in command of the Assault Amphibian MCM Platoon. Positioned in the Uppgunned Weapons Station of the platoon's logistics vehicle. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the Assault Amphibian Platoon Commander on training, welfare, administrative functions and tactical employment of the platoon.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Responsible for AAV crewman within platoon.
- (2) Responsible for vehicles and collateral equipment within platoon.
- (3) Audits administrative documents and assists in all maintenance management functions of the platoon.
- (4) Employs Uppgunned Weapons Stations.
- (5) Advises supported unit commander.
- (6) Assumes command in Platoon Commander's absence.
- (7) Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and platoon.
- (8) Coordinates logistical support for Assault Amphibian platoon.
- (9) Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

14. BILLET: Company Logistics Chief. Second most senior 1833 Marine in the AA company who is responsible for all logistical requirements. He assists the Company Operations Chief and the executive officer in the logistical planning of the company.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Advises the company commander on unit logistical requirements.
- (2) Coordinates company logistical support.
- (3) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.
- (4) Coordinates company embarkation plans.
- (5) Monitors company hazardous material section.
- (6) Assists the Executive officer and Company Operations Chief in planning future operations.
- (7) Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
- (8) Trains AA Platoon Sergeants in performance of duties.
- (9) Mentors the Staff Non Commissioned Officers of the Company

15. BILLET: Company Operations Chief. Senior 1833 Marine in the AA company. Advises the company commander on training and operations of the AA company.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Advises the company commander in monitoring, conducting, reporting, and supervising unit training.
- (2) Coordinates and evaluates Company individual and unit training.
- (3) Conducts quartering party operations.
- (4) Coordinates COC setup and operations.
- (5) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in combat operations center.
- (6) Coordinates assembly area activities.
- (7) Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.
- (8) Assists the Executive officer in planning future operations.
- (9) Advises the AA company commander on all 1833 Marine matters.
- (10) Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
- (11) Trains AA platoon Sergeants in performance of duties.
- (12) Mentors the Staff Non Commissioned Officers of the Company.

16. BILLET: Battalion Logistics Chief. Senior 1833 Marine in the battalion logistics section.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Advises the logistics officer on unit logistical requirements.
- (2) Coordinates battalion logistical support.
- (3) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.
- (4) Determines logistical requirements for unit training.
- (5) Coordinates battalion embarkation plans.
- (6) Monitors battalion hazardous material section.
- (7) Coordinates Logistics Operations Center (LOC) setup and activities.
- (8) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in LOC.

17. BILLET: Battalion Operations Chief. Senior 1833 Marine in the battalion operations section.

a. Core Capabilities:

- (1) Advises the operations officer on unit training.
- (2) Coordinates battalion individual and unit training.
- (3) Coordinates COC setup and operations.
- (4) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in combat operations center.
- (5) Coordinates assembly area activities.
- (6) Evaluates individual and unit training.
- (7) Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.
- (8) Assists the operations officer in planning future operations.
- (9) Advises the AA battalion commander on all 1833 Marine matters.

7005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event	Event	Page
1000-LEVEL		
1833-GNRY-1001	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons	7-10
1833-GNRY-1002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station	7-11
1833-GNRY-1003	Operate Upgunned Weapons Station	7-11
1833-GNRY-1004	Set Headspace and Adjust Timing	7-12
1833-GNRY-1005	Install/Remove Weapons	7-13
1833-GNRY-1006	Assist in Minor Boresighting	7-13
1833-GNRY-1007	Load/Unload Weapons	7-14
1833-GNRY-1008	Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station	7-14
1833-GNRY-1009	Utilize a Range Card	7-15
1833-GNRY-1010	Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific theater vehicles	7-16
1833-GNRY-1011	Engage Stationary Target from a Stationary Position	7-17
1833-GNRY-1012	Conduct Failure to Fire Procedures	7-18
1833-GNRY-1013	Conduct Gunnery Skills Test	7-18
1833-GNRY-1014	Perform Individual Actions as Assigned crew member for Gun Table 1	7-19
1833-GNRY-1015	Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	7-20
1833-GNRY-1016	Load/Unload M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	7-20
1833-CMDC-1001	Communicate Using Visual Signals	7-21
1833-CMDC-1002	Identify Signals	7-22
1833-CMDC-1003	Conduct Internal and External Communications	7-22
1833-CMDC-1004	Conduct Operational Safety	7-23
1833-CMDC-1005	Participate in tactical formations and movement techniques	7-23
1833-VOPS-1001	Conduct Operational Checks	7-24
1833-VOPS-1002	Embark Personnel on an AAV	7-25
1833-VOPS-1003	Start the Engine	7-25

1833-VOPS-1004	Start the Engine by Alternate Means	7-26
1833-VOPS-1005	Drive the Assault Amphibious Vehicle	7-26
1833-VOPS-1006	Identify a System Malfunction	7-27
1833-VOPS-1007	Conduct Emergency Maintenance Procedures on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Subsystems	7-27
1833-VOPS-1008	Operate Smoke Generation System	7-28
1833-VOPS-1009	Conduct Land Tow	7-28
1833-VOPS-1010	Operate Driver's Vision Enhancer (DVE)	7-29
1833-VOPS-1011	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	7-30
1833-VOPS-1012	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Communications Equipment	7-30
1833-VOPS-1013	Install/remove Special Mission Kit	7-31
1833-AMPH-1001	Conduct Pre-Water Operation Checks	7-31
1833-AMPH-1002	Embark/Debark amphibious shipping	7-32
1833-AMPH-1003	Operate the Assault Amphibious Vehicle in Water	7-32
1833-AMPH-1004	Conduct Water Tow	7-33
1833-AMPH-1005	Assist Evacuation of Embarked Personnel	7-34
1833-AMPH-1006	Egress the AAV	7-34
1833-TAC-1001	Camouflage an Assault Amphibious Vehicle	7-35
2000-LEVEL		
1833-GNRY-2001	Set Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station	7-35
1833-GNRY-2002	Conduct Detailed Disassembly/Assembly	7-36
1833-GNRY-2003	Set Headspace and Timing	7-37
1833-GNRY-2004	Conduct Minor Boresight Upgunned Weapons Station	7-37
1833-GNRY-2005	Develop a Range Card	7-38
1833-GNRY-2006	Create Fire Plan Sketch	7-39
1833-GNRY-2007	Identify Combat Vehicles	7-39
1833-GNRY-2008	Install/Remove M240	7-40
1833-GNRY-2009	Engage a Target with M240	7-40
1833-GNRY-2010	Perform the Engagement Process	7-41
1833-GNRY-2011	Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	42
1833-GNRY-2012	Perform immediate action procedures for an M257 smoke grenade launcher	7-43
1833-CMDC-2001	Control Radio Communications	7-43
1833-CMDC-2002	Respond to Signals	7-44
1833-CMDC-2003	Conduct Operational Safety	7-44
1833-CMDC-2004	Operate Command Communication System	7-45
1833-CMDC-2005	Assist in the Development of Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Products	7-45
1833-CMDC-2006	Issue a Fragmentary Order	7-46
1833-CMDC-2007	Submit Reports	7-47

1833-CMDC-2008	Advise Infantry on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment	7-47
1833-VOPS-2001	Maintain Logbook	7-48
1833-VOPS-2002	Inspect Operational Checks	7-48
1833-VOPS-2003	Inspect Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	7-49
1833-VOPS-2004	Inspect Emergency Maintenance Procedures	7-49
1833-VOPS-2005	Conduct Recovery Operations	7-50
1833-VOPS-2006	Supervise Demolition of AAV	7-51
1833-CBTS-2001	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System	7-51
1833-CBTS-2002	Install Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System	7-52
1833-CBTS-2003	Load Ordnance Material	7-53
1833-CBTS-2004	Deploy Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System	7-53
1833-CBTS-2005	Unload Ordnance	7-54
1833-CBTS-2006	Remove Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System	7-55
1833-CBTS-2007	Advise Breach Force Commander	7-56
1833-CSS-2001	Track Administrative Maintenance Processes	7-56
1833-CSS-2002	Monitor Maintenance Reports	7-57
1833-CSS-2003	Conduct Vehicle Inspection	7-57
1833-AMPH-2001	Evacuate Embarked Personnel	7-58
1833-AMPH-2002	Prepare AAV Unit for Amphibious Operations	7-59
1833-TAC-2001	Conduct Operations in Special Terrain	7-59

7006. 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

1833-GNRY-1001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Mk 19, M240B, and M2 machineguns and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition and ready for its primary Mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the machineguns
2. Perform safety check
3. Disassemble the weapon
4. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components

5. Report worn or defective parts
6. Assemble the weapon
7. Perform function check

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
3. TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
4. TM 08670A/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

1833-GNRY-1002: Conductive Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Uppgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given collateral material and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition and ready for its primary mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Apply PMCS to turret exterior
2. Apply PMCS to turret interior
3. Lubricate turret components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Uppgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1833-GNRY-1003: Operate Uppgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle.

STANDARD: To ensure readiness of all components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist
2. Manipulate electrical components
3. Manipulate manual components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Turret Trainer (AAV-TT)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833-GNRY-1004: Set Headspace and Adjust Timing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare weapon for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set headspace
2. Adjust timing

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

1833-GNRY-1005: Install/Remove Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given machineguns, Upgunned Weapons Station, crew and reference.

STANDARD: Within 20 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install Mk 19
2. Install M2
3. Remove Mk 19
4. Remove M2

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
 2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1833-GNRY-1006: Assist in Minor Boresighting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew, machineguns, boresighting kit and references.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment, within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assist with boresight procedures for M36E
2. Assist with retention procedures

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1D Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 8F419D1/4 Upgunned Weapons Station M36E Thermal Sighting System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1833-GNRY-1007: Load/Unload Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, crew, and ammunition.

STANDARD: within 20 minutes to prepare Upgunned Weapons Station to fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Load/unload Mk 19
2. Load/unload M2
3. Load/unload M257

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1D Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	200 rounds per AAV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	96 rounds per AAV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event this task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test and Gunnery Tables.

1833-GNRY-1008: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Live fire gunnery designed to zero the Upgunned Weapons Station.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Boresighted Assault Amphibious Vehicle, ammunition and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To place center of beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Zero the sight to the Mk 19 machine gun
2. Zero the M2 machine gun to the sight

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	50 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	50 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	8 rounds per AAV
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	8 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Ammunition is either TP or HE DP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). This Task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

1833-GNRY-1009: Utilize a Range Card

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To engage targets with the Ungunned Weapons Station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient the Range Card
2. Identify Main Terrain Features
3. Identify Target Reference Point
4. Identify Vehicle Location
5. Identify Sectors of Fire
6. Identify PDF and FPL
7. Identify Dead Space
8. Identify OP
9. Identify Obstacles

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Ungunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833-GNRY-1010: Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific threat vehicles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a classroom present 20 combat vehicles.

STANDARD: To name 18 out of 20 Vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify characteristics of the vehicle
2. Identify type of vehicle

REFERENCES:

1. ROC-V Recognition of Combat Vehicles

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. 2. A minimum of four of these slides must be thermal signatures (if unit is equipped with thermal optics). A minimum of five U.S. vehicles and helicopters (mixed; no more than three helicopters per test) will be selected from U.S. armored vehicles and combat helicopters currently in use. 3. All U.S. equipment must be identified correctly to receive a GO rating. 4. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1833-GNRY-1011: Engage Stationary Target from a Stationary Position

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gunnery that demonstrates engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a loaded Upgunned Weapons Station.

STANDARD: To suppress and destroy targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Employing a gunnery technique.
2. Implementing a method of engagement
3. Using proper fire commands
4. Terminating the engagement

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	100
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	64 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. 1. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification. 2. Ammunition is either TP or HE DP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 3. Gunners will utilize/validate a range card to engage targets. 4. Short range is 400 - 800m; long range is 800 - 1800m. 5. All steps can be performed in degraded gunnery (non-electric).

1833-GNRY-1012: Conduct Failure to Fire Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with weapons installed.

STANDARD: In sequence and in 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform Immediate Action on Mk 19
2. Perform Immediate Action on Mk 19 with a jammed bolt
3. Perform Immediate Action on the M2 machine gun

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test and Gunnery Tables.

1833-GNRY-1013: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

BILLETS: Driver, Third Crewman, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, all associated training devices and references.

STANDARD: in accordance with ST 3-20.21-1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles
2. Identify Ammunition
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on MK19 40mm Machinegun
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M2 HB caliber Machine Gun
5. Misfire Procedures Turret Mounted Weapons
6. Load/Unload Turret Mounted Weapons

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. ST 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

1833-GNRY-1014: Perform individual actions as assigned crew member for Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Driver, Third Crewman, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As crew member, Given an AAV, all associated equipment, and crew.

STANDARD: To perform all 7 performance tasks.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills
2. Perform crew roll over Drills
3. Send, Receive radio reports
4. Send, Receive digital reports
5. Evacuate an injured crewman
6. Boresight an AAV
7. Mount and Remove Turret Mounted Weapons

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Special equipment is required for night operations (i.e. cone lights, chemical light sticks, etc.)

1833-CMDC-1002: Identify Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights and markers.

STANDARD: To assist in the control of Assault Amphibious Vehicle movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Recognize standard beach signals/markers
2. Recognize standard naval signals/markers
3. Recognize standard tactical signals/markers
4. Recognize standard logistical signals/markers

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-CMDC-1003: Conduct Internal/External Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, radio net and reference.

STANDARD: To communicate with crew and other elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman's (CVC) helmet
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier

5. Operate the receiver / transmitters
6. Operate the position location systems
7. Secure communication equipment from operation

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 11-5820-1172-13 Operator and Maintenance Manual, Defense Advanced GPS Receiver (DAGR) Satellite Signals Navigation Set AN/PSN-13
3. TM 11-5820-890-10-6 Operator's Pocket Guide for SINCGARS Ground ICOM Radios

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-CMDC-1004: Conduct Operational Safety

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of crew and embarked personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure serviceability of recovery equipment
2. Ensure serviceability of waterborne equipment
3. Secure equipment/cargo items on vehicle
4. Enforce all safety regulations with embarked personnel
5. Verify that all dismounted personnel maintain minimum safe distance from vehicle

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-CMDC-1005: Participate in tactical formations and movement techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This is an 1833 skill that is applicable to all drivers and vehicle commanders.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As a driver on an AAV, given a vehicle commander and a supportable area.

STANDARD: To follow commands and maintain control and mutual support throughout the movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Participate in column formation
2. Participate vee formation
3. Participate in wedge formation
4. Participate in echelon left/right formation
5. Participate in successive bounds
6. Participate in unit on-line formation
7. Participate in bounding overwatch
8. Participate in traveling overwatch

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-VOPS-1001: Conduct Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew and Technical Manual.

STANDARD: To complete steps per the references and ensure the AAV is operationally ready.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform pre-operation checks.
2. Perform during operation checks.
3. Perform at-halt operation checks.
4. Perform after operation checks.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-1002: Embark Personnel onto an AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle conducting operations and a load plan.

STANDARD: To ensure personnel and vehicle safety.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assist the AAV crew chief with administering the safety brief.
2. Ensure all embarked gear and equipment are properly stowed.
3. Ensure embarked personnel comply with safety requirements/procedures.

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-VOPS-1003: Start the Engine

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle.

STANDARD: To prevent mechanical malfunctions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Follow the pre-operation checklist
2. Apply normal conditions starting procedures
3. Apply freezing conditions starting procedures

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-1004: Start the Engine by Alternate Means

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled Assault Amphibious Vehicle.

STANDARD: To start the engine.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Follow the pre-operation checklist
2. Follow slave start procedures
3. Follow tow start procedures

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-1005: Drive the Assault Amphibious Vehicle

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a crew and land operational area.

STANDARD: To negotiate various types of terrain.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine direction of movement
2. Determine locations of terrain, personnel, and other vehicles around AAV
3. Place vehicle in motion
4. Identify vehicle limitations
5. Negotiate obstacles
6. Stop vehicle
7. Stop the engine

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-VOPS-1006: Identify a System Malfunction

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle and the TM 09674A-10/3.

STANDARD: To resolve the probable cause.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Recognize a malfunction symptom
2. Follow the troubleshooting chart
3. Report all discrepancies to vehicle commander and/or maintenance personnel
4. Assist maintenance personnel in performance of corrective maintenance and services

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-1007: Conduct Emergency Maintenance Procedures on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Subsystems

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given malfunctioning contact cooler or hydraulic system.

STANDARD: To restore the vehicle to an operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Follow the contact cooler bypass procedures
2. Follow emergency closing of the plenums procedures

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-1008: Operate Smoke Generation System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle and operational area.

STANDARD: To obscure the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the vehicle for smoke generation use
2. Operate the system
3. Shutdown the system

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-VOPS-1009: Conduct Land Tow

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled Assault Amphibious Vehicle and required vehicles with crew and equipment.

STANDARD: To move the disabled AAV.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing
2. Tow using tow bar
3. Tow using tow cables

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-VOPS-1010: Operate Driver's Vision Enhancer (DVE)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle in a low visibility environment.

STANDARD: To drive the AAV while maneuvering at night.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct DVE pre-operation checks
2. Install driver's unit and commander's display assembly
3. Use driver's unit and commander's display assembly
4. Remove driver's unit and commander's display assembly
5. Maintain DVE

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
 2. TM 8H667-13&P/1 Drivers Vision Enhancer
-

1833-VOPS-1011: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, collateral material and TM 09674A-10/3C.

STANDARD: To maintain vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. PMCS the vehicle exterior
2. PMCS the vehicle engine compartment
3. PMCS the vehicle driver and troop commander's station
4. PMCS the vehicle troop compartment
5. PMCS the vehicle while engine is running
6. PMCS and inventory the vehicle SL-3

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-1012: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Communications Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To maintain equipment readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean and inspect the amplifier
2. Clean and inspect the intercom system components
3. Clean and inspect the Frequency Selector Control
4. Clean and inspect the radios
5. Clean and inspect the radio mounts
6. Clean and inspect Combat Vehicle Crewman helmet

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-1013: Install/Remove Special Mission Kits

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 36 months

DESCRIPTION: Assault Amphibious Vehicle Special Mission Kits include: Enhanced Appliqué' Armor Kit, Litter Kit, Winterization Kit and Visor Kit.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, collateral material and references.

STANDARD: To add to the capabilities of the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct inventory
2. Conduct PMCS
3. Install kit
4. Remove kit

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-AMPH-1001: Conduct Pre-Water Operation Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew and resources.

STANDARD: To prepare the vehicle and crew for water operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform pre-water operation checks
2. Complete vehicle manifest

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

1833-AMPH-1002: Embark/Debark amphibious shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew and amphibious shipping.

STANDARD: To transfer personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform embarkation procedures
2. Secure vehicle with lashing assembly.
3. Perform debarkation procedures

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3340.3 C Wet Well Operations Manual
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Amphibious shipping is required to accomplish this task.

1833-AMPH-1003: Operate the Assault Amphibious Vehicle in Water

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a crew and amphibious operations area.

STANDARD: To negotiate various bodies of water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure water tight integrity
2. Follow land to water procedures
3. Utilize bow plane
4. Employ water driving techniques
5. Follow water to land procedures

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

1833-AMPH-1004: Conduct Water Tow

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV in the water, an operational Assault Amphibious Vehicle in the water, crews, and equipment.

STANDARD: To recover the disabled AAV and return it to ship or shore.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare disabled vehicle for towing
2. Prepare towing vehicle for towing
3. Tow disabled vehicle

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

1833-AMPH-1005: Assist Evacuation of Embarked Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a distressed waterborne Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew.

STANDARD: To prevent injury or loss of life while executing steps in sequence.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Follow driver emergency procedures afloat
2. Follow crewman emergency procedures afloat
3. Perform water survival techniques

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1833-AMPH-1006: Egress the AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 4 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a rapidly sinking or submerged AAV.

STANDARD: to exit the AAV and reach the surface of the water.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Unfasten seatbelt
2. Unlock assigned hatch
3. Employ life support equipment as required
4. Exit vehicle

5. Gain access to surface

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: This task shall be trained using the Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET). Egress drills can be conducted on AAV while parked at the ramp or during field exercises, but the training will not be satisfied by any means other than SVET.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Reserve training will take place at Initial Location for Mobilization (ILOC) or during two week annual training (AT).

1833-TAC-1001: Camouflage an Assault Amphibious Vehicle

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, crew and camouflage system.

STANDARD: To avoid enemy observation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare camouflage system
2. Employ camouflage system
3. Stow camouflage system

REFERENCES:

1. TM 5-1080-200-10 Lightweight Camouflage Screen System and Support System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

7007. 2000-LEVEL EVENTS

1833-GNRY-2001: Set Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, inhibit zone aligning tool and reference.

STANDARD: To establish safe and effective fields of fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone
2. Establish the inhibit zone elevation
3. Establish Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths
4. Establish Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths
5. Reset inhibit points if applicable

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Uppgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool

1833-GNRY-2002: Conduct Detailed Disassembly/Assembly

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 Heavy-Barrel Machine Gun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep the weapon in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Remove extractor
2. Remove bolt switch and stud
3. Remove cocking lever
4. Remove sear stop
5. Remove sear slide
6. Remove sear and spring
7. Remove firing pin extension and firing pin
8. Assemble bolt group

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

1833-GNRY-2003: Inspect Headspace and Timing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare weapon for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect headspace
2. Inspect timing

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

1833-GNRY-2004: Conduct Minor Boresight Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew, machineguns, boresight kit and reference.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment, within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct boresight procedures for M36E

2. Conduct retention procedures

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part the Table I.

1833-GNRY-2005: Develop a Range Card

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To engage targets with the Upgunned Weapons Station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify Main Terrain Features
2. Identify Target Reference Point
3. Identify Vehicle Location
4. Identify Sectors of Fire
5. Identify PDF and FPL
6. Identify Dead Space
7. Identify Listening/Observation Point position
8. Identify Obstacles

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833-GNRY-2006: Create Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position.

STANDARD: To provide overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Combine Vehicle Range Cards
2. Illustrate Vehicles and Firing Data
3. Illustrate dead space
4. Illustrate terrain
5. Annotate orientation data

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

1833-GNRY-2007: Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific threat vehicles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a classroom present 20 combat vehicles.

STANDARD: To name 18 out of 20 Vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify characteristics of the vehicle
2. Identify the type of vehicle

3. Identify the role of the vehicle
4. Identify armament of vehicle
5. Identify the maximum range (threat) of vehicle weapons

REFERENCES:

1. ROC-V Recognition of Combat Vehicles

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event this task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1833-GNRY-2008: Install/Remove M240

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle C7.

STANDARD: To provide security for the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install pintle mount
2. Secure machine gun mount on pintle
3. Install machine gun on machine gun mount
4. Remove machine gun from machine gun mount
5. Remove machine gun mount from pintle
6. Remove pintle mount

REFERENCES:

1. TM 07268B-10/1D Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 (AAVC7A1) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
 2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

1833-GNRY-2009: Engage a Target with M240

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle C7.

STANDARD: To suppress the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare weapon for firing
2. Load the M240
3. Set estimated range
4. Aim in on target
5. Execute fire commands
6. Change barrel
7. Troubleshoot M240

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	300

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

1833-GNRY-2010: Perform the Engagement Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: to destroy or neutralize the threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect a threat
2. Identify a threat
3. Decide on a course of action
4. Execute engagement
5. Assess target effects

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This task will be executed using simulation. 2. This Task will be performed to standard during Gunnery Tables.

1833-GNRY-2011: Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: In order to provide obscuration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the situation
2. Orient the turret/vehicle in the direction where the smoke is needed
3. Announce "grenade launcher"
4. The crew secures all hatches
5. Arm Smoke Grenade launcher switch
6. Announce "fire"
7. Fire the grenade launcher(s)
8. Safe weapon

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
GG24 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8 grenades per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulation will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833-GNRY-2012: Perform immediate action procedures for an M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To correct failure to fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Wait 10-20 seconds for second attempt to fire
2. Wait 10-20 seconds for second attempt to fire
3. Check smoke grenades are firmly seated in discharge tube
4. Attempt to fire
5. Disposal of misfired smoke grenades
6. Any misfired grenade must remain in discharge tube for at least 4 Minutes

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Only qualified ordnance personnel can remove misfired smoke grenades

1833-CMDC-2001: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, and Communications Electronics Operating Instruction.

STANDARD: To enforce voice radio procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all elements have the data and COMSEC
2. Update Frequency Hopping data using electronic remote fill (ERF)
3. Enforce standard radio procedures
4. Assign local unit call signs and frequencies
5. Enforce radio silence
6. Determine the presence of electronic countermeasures (ECM)

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCRP 6-22C RADIO OPERATOR'S HANDBOOK
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-CMDC-2002: Respond to Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, pyrotechnics and markers.

STANDARD: To control Assault Amphibious Vehicle movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Respond to standard beach signals/markers
2. Respond to standard naval signals/markers
3. Respond to standard tactical signals/markers
4. Respond to standard logistical signals/markers

REFERENCES:

1. COMDTINST M16500.7A Aids to Navigation Manual-Administration
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

1833-CMDC-2003: Conduct Operational Safety

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle.

STANDARD: To ensure the safety of crew and embarked personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct mission analysis and assess the situation
2. Develop safety plans
3. Implement safety plans
4. Supervise implementation of safety plans

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
 4. TM 10004A-10/1E Ungunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1833-CMDC-2004: Operate Command Communication System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle C7 variant.

STANDARD: To ensure that the system is ready for the using unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Account for system components
2. Power-up system
3. Operate TOCNET
4. Secure system after operation

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. TM 08463A-10 Command Communications System, Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 (AAVC7A1)
-

1833-CMDC-2005: Assist in the Development of Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield Products

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and an area of operations.

STANDARD: To evaluate enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities and probable courses of action.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assist with defining the battlefield environment
2. Assist with describing the Battlefield Effects.
3. Assist in evaluating the threat
4. Assist in determining threat Course of Action
5. Advise the AA Platoon Commander on AAV employment considerations based on IPB products

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-CMDC-2006: Issue a Fragmentary Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation order and commander's intent.

STANDARD: To provide additional direction and guidance to subordinate unit leaders and crews.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine areas from the HHQ order that apply
2. Update situation and provide additional information
3. Communicate the order
4. Supervise preparation and execution

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-13.1A The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC)
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)
-

1833-CMDC-2007: Submit Reports

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given report formats and a situation requiring tactical or administrative information.

STANDARD: To inform higher headquarters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine type of report (administrative, logistical, operational and amphibious)
2. Generate report
3. Forward report

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 3. MCRP 3-13.1A The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC)
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-CMDC-2008: Advise Infantry on Assault Amphibious Vehicle Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a mechanized infantry mission.

STANDARD: To inform the supported unit leader about within the vehicle's/units capabilities, and assist with planning by providing subject matter expertise.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Brief the vehicle limitations/capabilities
2. Brief the vehicle defense employment
3. Brief the weapons tactical employment
4. Brief C7 capabilities/limitations
5. Brief the logistical requirements
6. Brief the vehicle safety guidelines

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
 2. MCRP 3-13.1A The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC)
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-VOPS-2001: Maintain Logbook

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ordnance vehicle logbook.

STANDARD: To document operational history of vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inventory logbook
2. Make daily entries
3. Make monthly entries

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits) of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-2002: Inspect Operational Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle or unit with crew(s) and

resources.

STANDARD: To identify and correct discrepancies and report to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise and verify completion of pre-operation checklist
2. Supervise and verify completion of during operation checklist
3. Supervise and verify completion of at-halt operation checklist
4. Supervise and verify completion of after operation checklist
5. Supervise and verify completion of pre-water operation checklist
6. Verify completion of vehicle logbook

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

1833-VOPS-2003: Inspect Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle and collateral material.

STANDARD: To ensure PMCS is conducted in accordance with the references to maintain vehicle readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise/verify PMCS of the vehicle components are completed
2. Supervise/verify PMCS of the Upgunned Weapons Station is completed
3. Supervise/verify PMCS of the communication equipment is completed
4. Supervise/verify PMCS of the special mission kits are completed
5. Supervise/verify lubrication is completed

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

1833-VOPS-2004: Inspect Emergency Maintenance Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with leaking contact cooler or hydraulic system.

STANDARD: To restore the vehicle to an operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify contact cooler is bypassed
2. Verify plenums are manually closed and locked

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
-

1833-VOPS-2005: Conduct Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled Assault Amphibious Vehicle and additional AAVP7s or an AAVR7 with crews and equipment.

STANDARD: To recover the disabled AAV and position it for repair or towing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify tactical/non-tactical conditions
2. Identify types of assets required
3. Prepare disabled vehicle and assets
4. Execute recovery procedures

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Use of an AAVR7 for recovery operations is optional.

1833-VOPS-2006: Supervise Demolition of AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given demolition material and an order to destroy an AAV.

STANDARD: To prevent enemy use of the AAV and/or its critical components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the criteria to conduct demolition
2. Remove salvageable items
3. Zeroize communications equipment
4. Determine methods of destruction available
5. Determine the items to be destroyed
6. Destroy equipment or vehicle

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
3. TM 10004A-10/1D Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Recovery operations include all types of environments, land and water.

1833-CBTS-2001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform before operation PMCS
2. Perform during operation PMCS
3. Perform after operation PMCS
4. Perform scheduled maintenance PMCS
5. Lubricate LMC components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV Crewman when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2002: Install Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 5-ton-capable lifting source, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare the Mk 1 Mod 0 for deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Gather tools and equipment
3. Follow installation procedures
4. Bleed hydraulic system
5. Conduct operational test

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewman when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2003: Load Ordnance Material

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, 5-ton-capable lifting source, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare system for deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Follow pre-deployment checks
3. Follow rocket motor loading procedures
4. Follow line charge fusing procedures
5. Follow line charge loading procedures
6. Connect rocket bridle cables
7. Follow electrical connection of the line charge
8. Perform rocket thrust positive connection

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewman when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2004: Deploy Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7 with Mk 154 kit installed, ordnance, an obstacle, and required engineer support.

STANDARD: To launch and detonate ordnance in support of a breach.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Operate electrically
3. Operate manually
4. Follow ordnance malfunction procedures

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
J143 Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	3 rockets per AAV
ML25 Charge, Demolition Linear M59A1	3 charges per AAV
ML26 Charge, Demolition Inert Linear M69	3 charges per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17820 Engineer Qualification Range, Non-Standardized

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Inert charges may be used to substitute live charges to satisfy training requirement. Performed by AAV crewman when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2005: Unload Ordnance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, 5-ton-capable lifting source, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To clear the vehicle of munitions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Follow disarming line charges procedures
3. Follow unloading rocket procedures
4. Follow off-loading line charge container procedures
5. Follow line charge defusing procedures

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewman when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2006: Remove Mk 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, 5-ton-capable lifting source, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To return Assault Amphibious Vehicle to original configuration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Adhere to safety precautions
2. Gather tools and equipment
3. Follow removal procedures

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
2. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewman when assigned to MK154.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Mark 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System Operator's License.

1833-CBTS-2007: Advise Breach Force Commander

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV Mobility/Counter-Mobility unit, required supported and supporting elements of a breach force, and an obstacle.

STANDARD: To ensure Mk 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System is deployed and the AAV MCM unit is employed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Advise on logistics requirements
2. Determine breach type
3. Follow lane markers
4. Provide recommendations on MCM AAV unit employment

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Performed by AAV crewman when assigned to MK154.

1833-CSS-2001: Track Administrative Maintenance Processes

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Assault Amphibious Vehicle, identified discrepancy and reference.

STANDARD: To ensure maintenance action items are recorded for repair.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Report discrepancy
2. Complete equipment service requests.
3. Verify discrepancy is documented on MPR

REFERENCES:

1. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures
 2. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

1833-CSS-2002: Monitor Maintenance Reports

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Assault Amphibian unit.

STANDARD: To ensure all entries are current and correct.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify discrepancies
2. Verify job status
3. Verify parts status
4. Report readiness

REFERENCES:

1. MCO P4790.2_ MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
 2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures
-

1833-CSS-2003: Conduct Vehicle Inspection

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability, serviceability and operational readiness of unit equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect SL-3
2. Inspect AAV and systems
3. Inspect logbook
4. Inspect the weapon(s)
5. Inspect the communication system
6. Verify that all discrepancies are properly reported and reconciled in GCSS

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 4700-15/1_ Ground Equipment Record Procedures
3. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual

1833-AMPH-2001: Evacuate Embarked Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given distressed waterborne Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew.

STANDARD: To prevent injury or loss of life while executing steps in sequence.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Initiate emergency procedures afloat
2. Supervise driver emergency procedures afloat
3. Supervise crewman emergency procedures afloat

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family

of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area,
Amphibious Forces

1833-AMPH-2002: Prepare AAV Unit for Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Assault Amphibian unit, amphibious mission and reference.

STANDARD: To determine go/no go criteria for Assault Amphibious Vehicle amphibious operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct operations planning
2. Coordinate and deconflict operations area
3. Compile surf composition data
4. Complete Surf Observation Report
5. Complete Modified Surf Index
6. Submit reports
7. Supervise completion of pre-water operations checklists
8. Conduct splash team procedures

REFERENCES:

1. AASBn Order 3000.1 Common SOP for AAV Operations
2. COMNAVSURFLANTINST 3840.1B Joint Surf Manual
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area

1833-TAC-2001: Conduct Operations in Special Terrain

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Assault Amphibian unit, area of operations and higher's operation order.

STANDARD: To exploit vehicle capabilities within environmental limitations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Operate in jungle environment
2. Conduct riverine operations
3. Execute a river crossing
4. Operate in urban terrain
5. Operate in desert environment
6. Operate in mountainous terrain
7. Operate in cold weather

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

T&R MANUAL

Chapter 8

AA Battalion low density MOS EVENTS

	PARAGRAPH	PAGE
PURPOSE.	8000	8-2
EVENT CODING	8001	8-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	8002	8-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS	8003	8-2
2841-LEVEL EVENTS.	8004	8-3

T&R MANUAL

Chapter 8

AA Battalion low density MOS EVENTS

8000. PURPOSE. This appendix contains all Assault Amphibian Battalion low density MOSs events that are not captured in their parent T&R. These events illustrate the unique tasks that are executed specifically in an AA Battalion by the 2841 MOS.

8001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the AAV Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion and Company level are:

CMDC - Command and Control

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

8002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

1. Commanders should select which collective events under a MET will be E-Coded for purposes of recording and calculating Combat Readiness Percentages.

2. Each event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

8003. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event Code	Event	Page
	2000-LEVEL EVENTS	
2841-CMDC-2001	Advise supported unit on AAV C7 Communication System	8-3

8004. 2841-LEVEL EVENTS

2841-CMDC-2001: Advise supported unit on AAV C7 Communication System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

MOS PERFORMING: 2841

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle C7.

STANDARD: To enhance the supported units proficiency with system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assist with comm. suite configuration
2. Assist supported unit with developing TTPs for C7 operations
3. Assist supported unit with trouble shooting system

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. TM 08463A-10 Command Communications System, Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 (AAVC7A1)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. A supported unit's operations/fires element is required to accomplish this task. 2. AAVC7 communication technicians should attend the ground operations specialist course to enhance the AAV unit's ability to advise the supported unit.

AAV T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX A

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Publication 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.

After Action Review. A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

Assessment. An informal judgment of the unit's proficiency and resources made by a commander or trainer to gain insight into the unit's overall condition. It serves as the basis for the midrange plan. Commanders make frequent use of these determinations during the course of the combat readiness cycle in order to adjust, prioritize or modify training events and plans.

Chaining. A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-level. When a higher-level event by its nature requires the completion of lower-level events, they are "chained"; sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

Collective Event. A clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (i.e., task) that requires organized team or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission or function. A collective task is derived from unit missions or higher-level collective tasks. Task accomplishment requires performance of procedures composed of supporting collective or individual tasks. A collective task describes the exact performance a group must perform in the field under actual operational conditions. The term "collective" does not necessarily infer that a unit accomplishes the event. A unit, such as a squad or platoon conducting an attack; may accomplish a collective event or, it may be accomplished by an individual to accomplish a unit mission, such as a battalion supply officer completing a reconciliation of the battalion's CMR. Thus, many collective events will have titles that are the same as individual events; however, the standard and condition will be different because the scope of the collective event is broader.

Collective Training Standards (CTS). Criteria that specify mission and functional area unit proficiency standards for combat, combat support, and combat service support units. They include tasks, conditions, standards, evaluator instruction, and key indicators. CTS are found within collective training events in T&R Manuals.

Combat Readiness Cycle. The combat readiness cycle depicts the relationships within the building block approach to training. The combat readiness cycle progresses from T&R Manual individual core skills training, to the accomplishment of collective training events, and finally, to a unit's participation in a contingency or actual combat. The combat readiness cycle demonstrates the relationship of core capabilities to unit combat readiness. Individual core skills training and the training of collective events lead to unit proficiency and the ability to accomplish the unit's stated mission.

Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP). The CRP is a quantitative numerical value used in calculating collective training readiness based on the E-Coded events that support the unit METL. CRP is a concise measure of unit training accomplishments. This numerical value is only a snapshot of training readiness at a specific time. As training is conducted, unit CRP will continuously change.

Condition. The condition describes the training situation or environment under which the training event or task will take place. Expands on the information in the title by identifying when, where and why the event or task will occur and what materials, personnel, equipment, environmental provisions, and safety constraints must be present to perform the event or task in a real-world environment. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.).

Core Competency. Core competency is the comprehensive measure of a unit's ability to accomplish its assigned MET. It serves as the foundation of the T&R Program. Core competencies are those unit core capabilities and individual core skills that support the commander's METL and T/O mission statement. Individual competency is exhibited through demonstration of proficiency in specified core tasks and core plus tasks. Unit proficiency is measured through collective tasks.

Core Capabilities. Core capabilities are the essential functions a unit must be capable of performing during extended contingency/combat operations. Core unit capabilities are based upon mission essential tasks derived from operational plans; doctrine and established tactics; techniques and procedures.

Core Plus Capabilities. Core plus capabilities are advanced capabilities that are environment, mission, or theater specific. Core plus capabilities may entail high-risk, high-cost training for missions that are less likely to be assigned in combat.

Core Plus Skills. Core plus skills are those advanced skills that are environment, mission, rank, or billet specific. 2000-level training is designed to make Marines proficient in core skills in a specific billet or at

a specified rank at the Combat Ready level. 3000-8000-level training produces combat leaders and fully qualified section members at the Combat Qualified level. Marines trained at the Combat Qualified level are those the commanding officer feels are capable of accomplishing unit-level missions and of directing the actions of subordinates. Many core plus tasks are learned via MOJT, while others form the base for curriculum in career level MOS courses taught by the formal school.

Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). A comprehensive readiness reporting system that evaluates readiness on the basis of the actual missions and capabilities assigned to the forces. It is a capabilities-based, adaptive, near real-time reporting system for the entire Department of Defense.

Deferred Event. A T&R event that a commanding officer may postpone when in his or her judgment, a lack of logistic support, ammo, ranges, or other training assets requires a temporary exemption. CRP cannot be accrued for deferred "E-Coded" events.

Delinquent Event. An event becomes delinquent when a unit exceeds the sustainment interval for that particular event. The individual or unit must update the delinquent event by first performing all prerequisite events. When the unit commander deems that performing all prerequisite is unattainable, then the delinquent event will be re-demonstrated under the supervision of the appropriate evaluation authority.

E-Coded Event. An "E-Coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted Collective skill that contributes to the unit's ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-Coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

Evaluation. Evaluation is a continuous process that occurs at all echelons, during every phase of training and can be both formal and informal. Evaluations ensure that Marines and units are capable of conducting their combat mission. Evaluation results are used to reallocate resources, reprioritize the training plan, and plan for future training.

Event (Training). 1) An event is a significant training occurrence that is identified, expanded and used as a building block and potential milestone for a unit's training. An event may include formal evaluations. 2) An event within the T&R Program can be an individual training evolution, a collective training evolution or both. Through T&R events, the unit commander ensures that individual Marines and the unit progress from a combat capable status to a Fully Combat Qualified (FCQ) status.

Event Component. The major procedures (i.e., actions) that must occur to perform a Collective Event to standard.

Exercise Commander (EC). The Commanding General, Marine Expeditionary Force or his appointee will fill this role, unless authority is delegated to the respective commander of the Division, Wing, or FSSG.

Responsibilities and functions of the EC include: 1) designate unit(s) to be evaluated, 2) may designate an exercise director, 3) prescribe exercise objectives and T&R events to be evaluated, 4) coordinate with commands or agencies external to the Marine Corps and adjacent Marine Corps commands, when required.

Exercise Director (ED). Designated by the EC to prepare, conduct, and report all evaluation results. Responsibilities and functions of the ED include: 1) Publish a letter of instruction (LOI) that: delineates the T&R events to be evaluated, establishes timeframe of the exercise, lists responsibilities of various elements participating in the exercise, establishes safety requirements/guidelines, and lists coordinating instructions. 2) Designate the TEC and TECG to operate as the central control agency for the exercise. 3) Assign evaluators, to include the senior evaluator, and ensure that those evaluators are properly trained. 4) Develop the general exercise scenario taking into account any objectives/events prescribed by the EC. 5) Arrange for all resources to include: training areas, airspace, aggressor forces, and other required support.

Marine Corps Ground Training and Readiness (T&R) Program. The T&R Program is the Marine Corps' primary tool for planning and conducting training, for planning and conducting training evaluation, and for assessing training readiness. The program will provide the commander with standardized programs of instruction for units within the ground combat, combat support, and combat service support communities. It consolidates the ITS, CTS, METL and other individual and unit training management tools. T&R is a program of standards that systematizes commonly accepted skills, is open to innovative change, and above all, tailors the training effort to the unit's mission. Further, T&R serves as a training guide and provides commanders an immediate assessment of unit combat readiness by assigning a CRP to key training events. In short, the T&R Program is a building block approach to training that maximizes flexibility and produces the best-trained Marines possible.

Mission Essential Task(s) MET(s). A MET is a collective task in which an organization must be proficient in order to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime mission(s). MET listings are the foundation for the T&R Manual; all events in the T&R Manual support a MET.

Mission Essential Task List (METL). Descriptive training document that provides units a clear, war fighting focused description of collective actions necessary to achieve wartime mission proficiency. The service-level METL, that which is used as the foundation of the T&R Manual, is developed using Marine Corps doctrine, operational plans, T/Os, UJTL, UNTL, and MCTL. For community based T&R Manuals, an occupational field METL is developed to focus the community's collective training standards. Commanders develop their unit METL from the service-level METL, operational plans, contingency plans, and SOPs.

Operational Readiness (DOD, NATO). OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions

or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

Prerequisite Event. Prerequisites are the academic training and/or T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the event.

Readiness (DOD). Readiness is the ability of U.S. military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

Section Skill Tasks. Section skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

Simulation Training. Simulators provide the additional capability to develop and hone core and core plus skills. Accordingly, the development of simulator training events for appropriate T&R syllabi can help maintain valuable combat resources while reducing training time and cost. Therefore, in cases where simulator fidelity and capabilities are such that simulator training closely matches that of actual training events, T&R Manual developers may include the option of using simulators to accomplish the training. CRP credit will be earned for E-Coded simulator events based on assessment of relative training event performance.

Standard. A standard is a statement that establishes criteria for how well a task or learning objective must be performed. The standard specifies how well, completely, or accurately a process must be performed or product produced. For higher-level collective events, it describes why the event is being done and the desired end-state of the event. Standards become more specific for lower-level events and outline the accuracy, time limits, sequencing, quality, product, process, restrictions, etc., that indicate the minimum acceptable level of performance required of the event. At a minimum, both collective and individual training standards consist of a task, the condition under which the task is to be performed, and the evaluation criteria that will be used to verify that the task has been performed to a satisfactory level.

Sustainment Training. Periodic retraining or demonstration of an event required maintaining the minimum acceptable level of proficiency or capability required to accomplish a training objective. Sustainment training goes beyond the entry-level and is designed to maintain or further develop proficiency in a given set of skills.

Systems Approach to Training (SAT). An orderly process for analyzing, designing, developing, implementing, and evaluating a unit's training program to ensure the unit, and the Marines of that unit acquire the knowledge and skills essential for the successful conduct of the unit's wartime missions.

Training Task. This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

Technical Exercise Controller (TEC). The TEC is appointed by the ED, and usually comes from his staff or a subordinate command. The TEC is the senior evaluator within the TEGC and should be of equal or higher grade than the commander(s) of the unit(s) being evaluated. The TEC is responsible for ensuring that the evaluation is conducted following the instructions contained in this order and MCO 1553.3A. Specific T&R Manuals are used as the source for evaluation criteria.

Tactical Exercise Control Group (TECG). A TECG is formed to provide subject matter experts in the functional areas being evaluated. The benefit of establishing a permanent TECG is to have resident, dedicated evaluation authority experience, and knowledgeable in evaluation technique. The responsibilities and functions of the TECG include: 1) developing a detailed exercise scenario to include the objectives and events prescribed by the EC/ED in the exercise LOI; 2) conducting detailed evaluator training prior to the exercise; 3) coordinating and controlling role players and aggressors; 4) compiling the evaluation data submitted by the evaluators and submitting required results to the ED; 5) preparing and conducting a detailed exercise debrief for the evaluated unit(s).

Training Plan. Training document that outlines the general plan for the conduct of individual and collective training in an organization for specified periods of time.

Unit CRP. Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-Coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

Unit Evaluation. All units in the Marine Corps must be evaluated, either formally or informally, to ensure they are capable of conducting their combat mission. Informal evaluations should take place during all training events. The timing of formal evaluations is critical and should, when appropriate, be directly related to the units' operational deployment cycle. Formal evaluations should take place after the unit has been staffed with the majority of its personnel, has had sufficient time to train to individual and collective standards, and early enough in the training cycle so there is sufficient time to correctly identified weaknesses prior to deployment. All combat units and units' task organized for combat require formal evaluations prior to operational deployments.

Unit Training Management (UTM). Unit training management is the use of the SAT and Marine Corps training principles in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit on its wartime mission. UTM governs the major peacetime training activity of the Marine Corps and applies to all echelons of the Total Force.

Waived Event. An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.

AAV T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX B

T&R CHANGES

1. Manual Management. A brief description of the role of stakeholders and the process of Manual management is warranted.

a. CG TECOM, Marine Air Ground Task Force Training and Education Standards Division (MTESD):

(1) Will manage the AAV T&R Manual and supervise associated program of instruction (POI) development, approval, management, and maintenance.

(2) Will input, update, and manage the T&R events within the Marine Corps Training Information Management System (MCTIMS).

(3) Will serve as the action agent for all T&R Manual working group, reviews, updates, and electronic distribution.

2. T&R Changes

a. T&R Reviews. A T&R review is a forum to routinely review and comprehensively revise the T&R Manual. T&R reviews will normally be conducted via working group and produce a new version (e.g. NAVMC 3500.1_) T&R reviews may be held via correspondence with CG TECOM (MTESD) approval. T&R reviews will normally convene on a triennial schedule; however, T&R reviews may be convened as appropriate or when higher headquarters direct.

b. T&R changes. A T&R change is a change to an existing T&R between T&R reviews. T&R changes are normally completed via correspondence and produce formal changes to the existing T&R Manual (e.g. NAVMC 3500.1A"Ch 1").

3. T&R Review Pre-Working Group Procedures

a. Action

(1) Content Sponsor. Content sponsors shall coordinate with CG TECOM (MTESD) to establish a T&R working group date and prepare the initial convening message to the appropriate commands employing the MOSs contained in this Manual with an information copy to CMC (DC PP&O). CG TECOM (MTESD) shall release this message 90 days before the proposed working group date. This message shall include the working group convening location and date, announce the purpose, and request interested units to submit agenda items. CG TECOM (MTESD) shall coordinate with the content sponsor to consolidate agenda items and release a working group agenda message to COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, COMMARSOC, MEFs, MARDIVs, and all commands employing the MOSs contained in this Manual.

(2) Total Force. Authorized agencies shall nominate voting representatives to CG TECOM (MTESD) via message NLT 45 days prior to the

working group. Units shall submit agenda items to CG TECOM (MTESD) and the content sponsor (Item, Discussion, Recommendation format) via message NLT 45 days prior to the working group.

(3) CG TECOM. CG TECOM (MTESD) shall provide guidance to the content sponsor. CG TECOM (MTESD) shall ensure agenda items are distributed to voting members NLT 30 days prior to the subject working group.

b. Working Group Funding. Organizations shall program funding requirements for working group attendance per MCO P7100.8 (Field Budget Guidance Manual).

4. T&R Review Working Group Procedures

a. All working group attendees shall be familiar with agenda items prior to the working group. Voting members shall staff agenda items and will have established command positions prior to attending a working group. As front-end agenda staffing facilitates the T&R update process, CG TECOM (MTESD) discourages accepting additional agenda items during T&R working group.

b. At the working group, attendees shall review the applicable T&R events and provide change recommendations per standard comment matrix. At a minimum, members of the working group shall complete the following tasks:

(1) Evaluate the events for effectiveness.

(2) Propose changes to the events. Review/validate/modify the following:

- (a) Mission statement/METL.
- (b) Programs of Instruction.
- (c) Content/Phase information.
- (d) Content events.
- (e) Training resource requirements.
- (f) Required T&R matrices/tables.
- (g) Content event conversion matrix.
- (h) T&R content evaluation forms.

(3) Coordinate content requirements with other communities as required.

c. Working group attendees may recommend a specific position, but it is CG TECOM, COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, and COMMARSOC who vote. This procedure ensures fair voting practices.

d. Action

(1) Content Sponsor. The content sponsor shall host the working group and ensure each attendee has access to a draft version of the T&R at the completion of the working group.

(2) CG TECOM. CG TECOM (MTESD) shall provide conference guidance to the content sponsors and facilitate T&R review procedures. CG TECOM (MTESD)

shall ensure individual T&R chapters are developed/updated per the policies contained in this Manual.

(3) CG TECOM, COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, and COMMARSOC shall designate one voting member with experience in day-to-day supervision of AAV training programs to each working group. The working group attendees should include representatives from each MEF, MARDIV, and any other appropriate staff officers. CG TECOM invites HQMC to send representatives.

5. Post-Working Group T&R Review Procedures

a. Action

(1) Content Sponsor. The content sponsor shall provide CG TECOM (MTESD) a smooth, electronic version of the draft T&R chapters within 10 working days of the working group completion. The content sponsor shall coordinate with CG TECOM (MTESD) to prepare and release a working group report message to the MARFORs within 10 working days of working group completion. Working group report messages shall delineate significant change recommendations and request MARFORs concur or non-concur with the draft T&R Manual.

(2) MARFORs. MARFORCOM, MARFORPAC, MARFORRES, and MARSOC shall consolidate comments from subordinate units and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM via message within 45 days of the working group completion date.

(a) MARFOR command T&R review working group representatives shall brief their respective commands on post working group results.

(b) MARFORs should coordinate to resolve post working group contentious issues.

(c) Failure to respond to post working group deadlines indicates concurrence with T&R content.

(3) CMC (DC PP&O). CMC shall review the proposed content and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM via message NLT 90 days after working group completion.

(4) CG TECOM

(a) CG TECOM (MTESD) shall coordinate with the content sponsor to prepare and release, within 10 working days, a working group report message. CG TECOM shall ensure draft electronic versions are made available to requesting agencies.

(b) CG TECOM shall attach MARFOR comments and forward the draft document to CMC (DC PP&O), NLT 60 days after working group completion. Unresolved issues shall be forwarded to CMC (DC PP&O) for decision.

(c) Upon MARFOR and CMC concurrence, CG TECOM shall approve the revised Manual. When the revision is approved by CG TECOM, CG TECOM (MTESD) shall release a message announcing the revision has been approved. CG TECOM

(MTESD) shall coordinate with CMC for publication and distribution as appropriate.

6. T&R Changes via Correspondence

a. Organizations recommending T&R changes shall submit proposed changes in message format via the respective MEF/DIV to CG TECOM (MTESD) and the content sponsor. Correspondence must include rationale for the change.

b. CG TECOM (MTESD) and the content sponsor shall review and forward the proposed change recommendations to all MEFs/DIVs within 5 working days of receipt of the correspondence.

c. MEFs/DIVs shall submit their comments and recommendations to CG TECOM (MTESD) and content sponsor within 30 days of the date of the request for comments. All comments and recommendations shall be submitted via message.

d. CG TECOM (MTESD) and the content sponsor shall consolidate comments and produce a smooth draft of proposed T&R changes (include update of the T&R event conversion matrix if applicable). CG TECOM (MTESD) shall release a T&R change recommendation message to the MARFORs and CMC (DC PP&O) within 45 days of the request for comments.

e. CMC (DC PP&O) and the MARFORs shall review the proposed T&R change and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM (MTESD) within 30 days of the Manual change recommendation message release. Unresolved issues shall be forwarded to CMC (DC PP&O) for decision. Upon concurrence, CG TECOM (MTESD) shall release a message approving the T&R Manual change.

7. Applicability. When a T&R Manual update or change is approved for use, the approved version of the Manual becomes the training standard for all applicable units. Units shall transition to the approved T&R Manual as soon as practical.

AAV T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX C

AMMUNITION REQUIREMENTS

Ammunition was calculated based on 100% of Table of Organization for individual training events and 100% of Table of Equipment for collective training events. The below chart depicts the total annual ammunition requirement for an AAV battalion and its personnel to train to standard on all events contained in this T&R Manual. Training events which list ammunition but do not require the expenditure of rounds have not been included in the below numbers. Dummy ammunition has been calculated based on an estimate of the total number of rounds required to adequately support the various training events that call for the particular DODIC.

DODIC	DESCRIPTION	3d AABN	2d AABN	4th AABN	CAB	CAC	TOTAL
A111	Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	5,110	5,110	2,044	1,825	500	14,589
A131	Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	56,000	56,000	22,400	20,000	1,500	155,900
A143	Cartridge, 7.62mm Ball M80 Linked	30,100	30,100	12,100	10,800	700	83,800
A555	Cartridge, Caliber .50 F/M2	288,750	283,950	124,600	50,400	35,850	783,550
A598	Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Linked	19,600	18,200	9,450	10,500	1,400	59,150
A560	Cartridge, .50 Cal Dummy	1,600	1,600	800	400	400	4,800
BA12	Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	62,736	61,712	27,168	10,752	7,728	170,096
M922A1	Cartridge, 40mm Dummy	768	768	384	192	192	2,304
GG24	Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Screening	1,704	1,704	720	96	120	4,407
J143	Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	72	72	0	12	0	156
L311	Signal, Illumination Ground Red St	227	227	95	47	15	611
L312	Signal, Illumination Ground White St	227	227	95	47	15	611
ML25	Charge, Demolition Linear M59A1	36	36	0	6	0	78

Gunnery Ammunition Requirements

The table below represents the ammunition allocation per the MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team Gunnery manual. This represents Crew, Section, and Platoon gunnery training and qualifications.

GUNNERY AMMUNITION TOTALS(*)				
GUNNERY TABLE/EVENT	50 Cal	40mm TP-T	A598 (.50 Blank)	REMARKS
ZERO	50	8	0	

CREW GUNNERY				
GT II (Crew Proficiency Course)	0	0	0	Gate To Live Fire(GTLF) must be fired dry
GT III (Basic Machine Gun)	0	96	0	Live fire machine gun
GT IV (Extended Range Machine Gun)	0	0	0	Extended range gunnery for combat arms unit conducted in AAV-TT
GT V (Crew Practice)	450	48	0	Live fire practice prior to qualification table
GT VI (Crew Qualification)	450	56	0	Qualification table. Gate to intermediate Gunnery
AAV TOTAL	950	208	0	Ammunition Requirements for 1 Crew to conduct Gunnery
SECTION GUNNERY				
GT VII (Intermediate Section Proficiency)	0	0	350	MILES/DRY
GT VIII (Intermediate Section Practice)	0	0	0	Dry fire practice prior to qualification
GT IX (Intermediate Section Qualification)	300	64	0	Live fire section qualification. Gate to Advanced Gunnery
PLATOON GUNNERY				
GT X (Advanced Platoon Proficiency)	0	0	350	MILES/DRY
GT XI (Advanced Platoon Practice)	0	0	0	Dry fire practice prior to qualification
GT XII (Advanced Platoon Qualification)	300	64	0	Live fire platoon qualification

NOTE: Ammunition totals should be based on a Battalions Table of Organization for Individual, Crew, and Platoon training and qualification events.

(*) Represents the quantity for each firing vehicle.

Totals are based on 213 Crews firing Crew Qualification once a year (active) and 90 crews firing Crew Qualification (Reserve), and Combat Assault Company (15).

8 Platoons will qualify Platoon Gunnery at each Active Battalion and 3 Platoons will qualify at the Reserves.

Each Section in a Line Platoon in a Line Company (36 Sections) and (8 MCM Sections) will shoot section Gunnery (Active). EXCEPTION 3rd AABN will qualify 4 additional Section in support of UDP.

Each Section in a Line Platoon in a Line Company (24 Sections) in the reserves will qualify every 12 Months.

CAB will conduct Section (24) and Platoon (6) Gunnery for sustainment while on UDP.

40mm TP-T is the only DODIC that can be shot on pop up targets.

AAV T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX D

SIMULATION

Listed in this appendix are applicable simulations available to improve training for individual MOS 1803 and 1833 standards as well as small unit assault amphibian training referenced in this manual.

1. The AAV-Turret Trainer (AAV-TT) is a non-deployable, stand-alone interactive simulation training platform. The AAV-TT utilizes surplus AAV Turret and Up-gunned Weapons Station (i.e., M-2 & Mk-19) modified to enable integration with a virtual training environment. In order to provide training of precision gunnery, weapons employment and crew coordination to individuals and crews, the AAV-TT consists of instructor/operator station, driver station, AAV turret, and intercom system. High-fidelity computer generated scenarios enable conduct of Gate-to-Live-Fire (GTLF), in addition to tactical decision making and maneuvering at the platoon level. The AAV-TT incorporates a driver's station with a 250⁰ field of view screen and vehicle controls, and utilizes tactical CVC helmets to allow crew coordination training between the vehicle commander in the turret, the crewman in the driver's station and the Instructor/Operator.

2. Deployable Virtual Training Environment (DVTE) is a first person skills sustainment trainer that can be used to train Marines from the individual to the battalion staff by using a simulation network with reconfigurable workstations capable of emulating a vast array of training scenarios. DVTE is made up of two components; the first is the Infantry Tool Kit (ITK) which contains several Tactical Decision-making Simulations. The other is the Combined Arms Network (CAN). DVTE training applications trains Marines to approved standards of combat skills and readiness.

3. Submerged Vehicle Egress Trainer (SVET) is an underwater escape trainer designed to duplicate the conditions a Marine may face as a crewman or embarked personnel if he or she is trapped in a vehicle upside down and/or under water. The SVET is used to train egress from rollover/submerged ground vehicles reinforcing operational and emergency procedures.

Upgrades made to the current simulation system should be capable of keeping pace with applicable modifications made to the AAV7 family of vehicles in order to replicating the above tasks in as realistic a functional environment (replication of the vehicle) as possible for the vehicle commander stationed in the UGWS turret and the vehicle driver in the driver's station.

AAV T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX E

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

AAV	Assault Amphibious Vehicle
AMPH.	Amphibious Operations
BDA	Battle Damage Assessment
BFT	Blue Force Tracker
C2	Command and Control
C2W	Command and Control Warfare
C4I	Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence
CA.	Civil Affairs
CAG	Civil Affairs Group
CAST.	Combined Arms staff trainer
CATF.	Commander Amphibious Task Force
CCIR.	Commander's Critical Information Requirements
CCP	Casualty Collection point
CE	Command Element
CHOP.	Change of Operational Control
CI	Counterintelligence
CJCSI	Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction
CJCSM	Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Manual
CMO	Civil-Military Operations
CNA	Computer Network Attack
CND	Computer Network Defense
CNE	Computer network Exploitation
CNO	Computer Network Operations
COA	Course of Action
COC	Company Operations Center
COG	Centers of Gravity
COMSEC.	Communications Security
CONOPS.	Contingency Operations
CP	Counter-Propaganda
CVC	Combat vehicle Crewman's Helmet
DCID.	Director of Center Intelligence Directive
DISA.	Defense Information Systems Agency
DoD	Department of Defense
DoDD.	Department of Defense Directive
DoDI.	Department of Defense Instruction
EA	Electronic Attack
ECM	Electronic Counter Measures
EMCON	Emissions Control
EMW	Expeditionary Maneuver Warfare
EP	Electronic Protection
ES	Electronic Support
EW	Electronic Warfare
FM	Field Manual (army)
FIWC.	Fleet Information Warfare Center
FOB	Forward Operating Base
FRAGO	Fragmentary Order

G2 Intelligence Officer (major subordinate commands and larger organizations)
G3 Operations Officer (major subordinate commands and larger organizations)
GCE Ground Combat Element
HUMINT. Human Intelligence
LCAVAT. Landing Craft and Amphibian Vehicle Assignment Table
LF Landing Force
LZ Landing Zone
MCDP. Marine Corps Doctrinal Publication
MCM Mine Counter Measure Platoon
MCPP. Marine Corps Planning Process
MCRP. Marine Corps Reference Publication
MCWP. Marine Corps Warfighting Publication
MEF Marine Expeditionary Force
METT-T. Mission, Enemy, Terrain and Weather, Troops and Support Available-Time Available

MPF Maritime pre-positioning force
NVD Night Vision Device
NVG Night Vision Goggle
OPORD Operation Order
OPSEC Operations Security
PMCS Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
ROV-V. Recognition of Vehicle
UHF Ultra High Frequency
VHF Very High Frequency

AAV T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX F

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENT

	<u>PAGE</u>
INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	F-2
1000-LEVEL EVENTS.	F-4
2000-LEVEL EVENTS.	F-28
3000-LEVEL EVENTS.	F-35
4000-LEVEL EVENTS.	F-41
5000-LEVEL EVENTS.	F-44

AAV T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX F

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENT

INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

Event Code	Eval Coded	Event	Pages
		1000-LEVEL EVENTS	
1803-GNRY-1001		Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons	F-4
1803-GNRY-1002		Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station	F-4
1803-GNRY-1003		Operate Upgunned Weapons Station	F-5
1803-GNRY-1004		Set Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station	F-6
1803-GNRY-1005		Set Headspace and Timing	F-6
1803-GNRY-1006		Install/Remove Weapons	F-7
1803-GNRY-1007		Conduct Minor Boresighting	F-7
1803-GNRY-1008		Load/Unload Weapons	F-8
1803-GNRY-1009		Prepare Fire Plan Sketch	F-9
1803-GNRY-1010		Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific theater vehicles	F-9
1803-GNRY-1011		Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station	F-10
1803-GNRY-1012		Engage Targets	F-11
1803-GNRY-1013		Control Distribution of Fires	F-12
1803-GNRY-1014		Conduct Failure to Fire Procedures	F-13
1803-GNRY-1015		Conduct Gunnery Skills Test	F-13
1803-GNRY-1016		Perform individual actions as AAV commander for Gun Table I	F-14
1803-GNRY-1017		Perform the engagement process	F-14
1803-GNRY-1018		Load/Unload M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	F-15
1803-GNRY-1019		Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	F-16
1803-GNRY-1020		Perform immediate action procedures for an M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	F-16
1833-GNRY-1001		Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons	F-17
1833-GNRY-1002		Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station	F-18
1833-GNRY-1003		Operate Upgunned Weapons Station	F-18
1833-GNRY-1004		Set in Headspace and Timing	F-19
1833-GNRY-1005		Install/Remove Weapons	F-20
1833-GNRY-1006		Assist in Minor Boresighting	F-20
1833-GNRY-1007		Load/Unload Weapons	F-21

1833-GNRY-1008		Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station	F-21
1833-GNRY-1009		Utilize a Range Card	F-22
1833-GNRY-1010		Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific theater vehicles	F-23
1833-GNRY-1011		Engage Stationary Target from a Stationary Position	F-24
1833-GNRY-1012		Conduct Failure to Fire Procedures	F-25
1833-GNRY-1013		Conduct Gunnery Skills Test	F-25
1833-GNRY-1014		Perform Individual Actions as Assigned crew member for Gun Table 1	F-26
1833-GNRY-1015		Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	F-26
1833-GNRY-1016		Load/Unload M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	F-27
2000-LEVEL EVENTS			
1833-GNRY-2001		Set Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station	F-28
1833-GNRY-2002		Conduct Detailed Disassembly/Assembly of the M2 heavy-Barrel Machine Gun	F-28
1833-GNRY-2003		Inspect Headspace and Timing	F-29
1833-GNRY-2004		Conduct Minor Boresight Upgunned Weapons Station	F-30
1833-GNRY-2005		Develop a Range Card	F-30
1833-GNRY-2006		Create Fire Plan Sketch	F-31
1833-GNRY-2007		Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific threat vehicles	F-32
1833-GNRY-2008		Install/Remove 240	F-32
1833-GNRY-2009		Engage a Target with M240	F-33
1833-GNRY-2010		Perform the Engagement Process	F-33
1833-GNRY-2011		Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher	F-34
1833-GNRY-2012		Perform immediate action procedures for an M257 smoke grenade launcher	F-35
3000-LEVEL EVENTS			
AAV-GNRY-3001		Conduct Gun Table I	F-35
AAV-GNRY-3002	Yes	Conduct Gun Table II	F-36
AAV-GNRY-3003		Conduct Gun Table III	F-38
AAV-GNRY-3004		Conduct Gun Table IV	F-39
AAV-GNRY-3005		Conduct Gun Table V	F-40
AAV-GN41RY-3006	Yes	Conduct Gun Table VI	F-41
4000-LEVEL EVENTS			
AAV-GNRY-4001		Conduct Gun Table VII	F-42
AAV-GNRY-4002		Conduct Gun Table VIII	F-43
AAV-GNRY-4003	Yes	Conduct Gun Table IX	F-44
5000-LEVEL EVENTS			
AAV-GNRY-5001		Conduct Gun Table X	F-45
AAV-GNRY-5002		Conduct Gun Table XI	F-46

AAV-GNRY-5003	YES	Conduct Gun Table XII	F-47
---------------	-----	-----------------------	------

1000-LEVEL GUNNERY EVENTS

1803-GNRY-1001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Mk 19, M2 or M240 machinegun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition and ready for its primary mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the machineguns
2. Disassemble the weapon
3. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components
4. Report worn or defective parts
5. Assemble the weapon
6. Perform function check

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
3. TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm, MK19 MOD 3
4. TM 08670A/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

1803-GNRY-1002: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Ungunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given collateral material and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition and ready for its primary mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Apply PMCS to turret exterior
2. Apply PMCS to turret interior
3. Lubricate turret components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1803-GNRY-1003: Operate Uppunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle.

STANDARD: To ensure readiness of all components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Complete pre-operation checklist
2. Manipulate electrical components
3. Manipulate manual components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Turret Trainer (AAV-TT)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations will be used as a precursor to live fire training in order to help maximize and enhance the live fire training event.

1803-GNRY-1004: Set Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, inhibit zone aligning tool and reference.

STANDARD: To keep the vehicle and personnel out of the line of fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone
2. Establish the inhibit zone elevation
3. Establish Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths
4. Establish Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths
5. Reset inhibit points if applicable

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1D Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool

1803-GNRY-1005: Set Headspace and Adjust Timing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2, and collateral equipment, and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare weapon for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set headspace
2. Adjust timing

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference

1803-GNRY-1006: Install/Remove Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given machineguns, Uppunned Weapons Station, crew and reference.

STANDARD: Within 20 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install Mk19
2. Install M2
3. Remove Mk 19
4. Remove M2

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
 2. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1803-GNRY-1007: Conduct Minor Boresighting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew, machineguns, boresighting kits and reference.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment, within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct boresight procedures for M36E_
2. Conduct retention procedures

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1D Uppunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

3. TM 8F419D1/4 Upgunned Weapons Station M36E Thermal Sighting System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1803-GNRY-1008: Load/Unload Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, ammunition and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare Upgunned Weapons Station to fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Load Ammunition into the Mk 19 and M2
2. UnLoad Ammunition from the Mk 19 and M2

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	200 rounds per AAV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	96 rounds per AAV

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Turret Trainer (AAV-TT)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test and Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1009: Prepare Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV Platoon in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To provide overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Combine section fire plan sketches firing data
2. Illustrate Vehicles and Firing Data
3. Illustrate dead space
4. Illustrate terrain
5. Annotate orientation data

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

1803-GNRY-1010: Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific threat vehicles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a classroom present 20 combat vehicles.

STANDARD: To name 18 out of 20 vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify characteristics of the vehicle
2. Identify the type of vehicle
3. Identify armament of vehicle
4. Identify maximum range (threat) of vehicle weapons

REFERENCES:

1. ROC-V Recognition of Combat Vehicles

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. 2. A minimum of four of these slides must be thermal signatures (if unit is equipped with thermal optics). A minimum of five U.S. vehicles and helicopters (mixed; no more than three helicopters per test) will be selected from U.S. armored vehicles and combat helicopters currently in use. 3. All

U.S. equipment must be identified correctly to receive a GO rating. 4. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test

1803-GNRY-1011: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Boresighted Assault Amphibious Vehicle, ammunition and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To place center of beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Zero the sight to the Mk 19 machine gun
2. Zero the M2 machine gun to the sight

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	50 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	50 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	8 rounds per Marine
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	8 rounds per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This Task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables. 2. Ammunition is either TP or HE DP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). This Task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1012: Engage Targets

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Designed to evaluate the Platoon Commanders ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle (short halt/tactical control point).

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with full sized targets.

STANDARD: To score a minimum of 70 points on 70% of the engagements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. One Defensive Engagement: Day and Night
2. One Offensive Engagement: Day and Night
3. One Short Halt or Traffic Control Point: Day OR Night
4. One Short Range Machine Gun Engagement: Day OR Night
5. One CBRN Engagement: Day and Night
6. One Short-Range Engagement: Day OR Night
7. One Long Range Engagement: Day OR Night

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	300 rounds per Marine
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	300 rounds per Marine
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	160 rounds per Marine
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	160 rounds per Marine

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. 2. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification. 3. Ammunition is either TP or HE DP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 4. Scenario Development, vehicle posture, and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLS) in MCWP 3-12.2

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Advanced Gunner (9-10) Qualified Gunner (7-8)
Unqualified (0-6)

1803-GNRY-1013: Control Distribution of Fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Enforces skills of the Platoon Commander gunnery that demonstrates engagement skills of a platoon.

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a maneuver element and an operations order.

STANDARD: To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct Gun Table X
2. Conduct Gun Table XI
3. Conduct Gun Table XII (Qualification)

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	300 rounds per AAV
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	64 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: The MCWP 3-12.2 provides guidance for Platoon Gunnery Tables X-XII Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803-GNRY-1014: Conduct Failure to Fire Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1803

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with weapons installed.

STANDARD: In sequence within 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform Immediate Action on Mk 19
2. Perform Immediate Action on Mk 19 with a jammed bolt
3. Perform Immediate Action on the M2 machine gun

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test and Gunnery Tables.

1803-GNRY-1015: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and all associated training devices.

STANDARD: in accordance with ST 3-20.21-1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles and Theater Threat Vehicles
2. Identify Ammunition
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on MK19 40mm Machinegun
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M2 HB caliber Machine Gun
5. Misfire Procedures Turret Mounted Weapons
6. Load/Unload Turret Mounted Weapons

1. Detect a threat
2. Identify a threat
3. Decide on a course of action
4. Execute engagement
5. Assess target effects

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAV-TT

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This task will be executed using simulation. 2. This task will be performed to standard during Gunnery tables.

1803-GNRY-1018: Load/Unload M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: Prepare the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn the vehicle and turret power OFF
2. Turn the grenade launcher switches OFF
3. Insert the grenades into the M257
4. Rotate 90 degrees
5. Unload the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher
6. Stow grenades

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8 grenades per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

1803-GNRY-1019: Fire the M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To obscure the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the situation
2. Orient the turret/vehicle in the direction where the smoke is needed
3. Announce "grenade launcher"
4. The crew secures all hatches
5. Arm Smoke Grenade launcher switch
6. Announce "fire"
7. Fire the grenade launcher(s)
8. Safe weapon

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulation will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1803-GNRY-1020: Perform immediate action procedures for an M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To correct failure to fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Wait 10-20 seconds for second attempt to fire

2. Smoke Grenade arming switch to OFF
3. Check smoke grenades are firmly seated in discharge tube
4. Attempt to fire
5. Disposal of misfired smoke grenades
6. Any misfired grenade must remain in discharge tube for at least 4 Minutes

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Uppgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8 grenades per weapon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Only qualified ordnance personnel can remove misfired smoke grenades.

1833-GNRY-1001: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given Mk 19, M240B, and M2 machineguns and references.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition and ready for its primary Mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the machineguns
2. Perform safety check
3. Disassemble the weapon
4. Inspect, clean and lubricate the components
5. Report worn or defective parts
6. Assemble the weapon
7. Perform function check

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
3. TM 08521A-10/1A Technical Manual, Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 40mm,

MK19 MOD 3

4. TM 08670A/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

1833-GNRY-1002: Conductive Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given collateral material and reference.

STANDARD: To keep equipment in operating condition and ready for its primary mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Apply PMCS to turret exterior
2. Apply PMCS to turret interior
3. Lubricate turret components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

1833-GNRY-1003: Operate Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle.

STANDARD: To ensure readiness of all components.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Complete UGWS pre-operation checklist

2. Manipulate electrical components
3. Manipulate manual components

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Assault Amphibian Vehicle Turret Trainer (AAV-TT)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833-GNRY-1004: Set Headspace and Adjust Timing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare weapon for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set headspace
2. Adjust timing

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

1833-GNRY-1005: Install/Remove Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given machineguns, Upgunned Weapons Station, crew and reference.

STANDARD: Within 20 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install Mk 19
2. Install M2
3. Remove Mk 19
4. Remove M2

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
 2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1833-GNRY-1006: Assist in Minor Boresighting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew, machineguns, boresighting kit and references.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment, within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assist with boresight procedures for M36E
2. Assist with retention procedures

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1D Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
2. TM 8F419D1/4 Upgunned Weapons Station M36E Thermal Sighting System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1833-GNRY-1007: Load/Unload Weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, crew, and ammunition.

STANDARD: within 20 minutes to prepare Upgunned Weapons Station to fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Load/unload Mk 19
2. Load/unload M2
3. Load/unload M257

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1D Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	200 rounds per AAV
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	96 rounds per AAV

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event this task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test and Gunnery Tables.

1833-GNRY-1008: Zero the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Live fire gunnery designed to zero the Upgunned Weapons Station.

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Boresighted Assault Amphibious Vehicle, ammunition and stationary target at 500m.

STANDARD: To place center of beaten zone on the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Zero the sight to the Mk 19 machine gun
2. Zero the M2 machine gun to the sight

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	50 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	50 rounds per AAV
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	8 rounds per AAV
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	8 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Ammunition is either TP or HE DP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). This Task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Tables.

1833-GNRY-1009: Utilize a Range Card

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To engage targets with the Upgunned Weapons Station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient the Range Card
2. Identify Main Terrain Features
3. Identify Target Reference Point
4. Identify Vehicle Location
5. Identify Sectors of Fire
6. Identify PDF and FPL
7. Identify Dead Space
8. Identify OP
9. Identify Obstacles

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833-GNRY-1010: Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific threat vehicles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a classroom present 20 combat vehicles.

STANDARD: To name 18 out of 20 Vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify characteristics of the vehicle
2. Identify type of vehicle

REFERENCES:

1. ROC-V Recognition of Combat Vehicles

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. 2. A minimum of four of these slides must be thermal signatures (if unit is equipped with thermal optics). A minimum of five U.S. vehicles and helicopters (mixed; no more than three helicopters per test) will be selected from U.S. armored vehicles and combat helicopters currently in use. 3. All U.S. equipment must be identified correctly to receive a GO rating. 4. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1833-GNRY-1011: Engage Stationary Target from a Stationary Position

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gunnery that demonstrates engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s).

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a loaded Upgunned Weapons Station.

STANDARD: To suppress and destroy targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Employing a gunnery technique.
2. Implementing a method of engagement
3. Using proper fire commands
4. Terminating the engagement

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-22.27 Mk 19 40mm Grenade Machine Gun Mod 3
2. FM 3-22.65 Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2
3. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	100
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	64 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations will be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. 1. Gunners will fire one practice and one qualification. 2. Ammunition is either TP or HE DP and Ball or API-T (Only TP and Ball on Pop-up targets). 3. Gunners will utilize/validate a range card to engage targets. 4. Short range is 400 - 800m; long range is 800 - 1800m. 5. All steps can be performed in degraded gunnery (non-electric).

1833-GNRY-1012: Conduct Failure to Fire Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with weapons installed.

STANDARD: In sequence and in 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform Immediate Action on Mk 19
2. Perform Immediate Action on Mk 19 with a jammed bolt
3. Perform Immediate Action on the M2 machine gun

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event. This task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test and Gunnery Tables.

1833-GNRY-1013: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Driver, Third Crewman, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, all associated training devices and references.

STANDARD: in accordance with ST 3-20.21-1.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles
2. Identify Ammunition
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on MK19 40mm Machinegun

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To ensure equipment readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the launcher
2. Clean the launcher tubes
3. Inspect the launcher tubes
4. Record/report discrepancies to organizational maintenance

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
 2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle
-

1833-GNRY-1016: Load/Unload M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To prepare the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn the vehicle and turret power OFF
2. Turn the grenade launcher switches OFF
3. Insert the grenades into the M257
4. Rotate 90 degrees
5. Unload the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher
6. Stow grenades

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8 grenades per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Don't place any part of body in front of launchers while loading or unloading.

2000-LEVEL GUNNERY EVENTS

1833-GNRY-2001: Set Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle, inhibit zone aligning tool and reference.

STANDARD: To establish safe and effective fields of fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone
2. Establish the inhibit zone elevation
3. Establish Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths
4. Establish Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths
5. Reset inhibit points if applicable

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Inhibit Zone Aligning Tool

1833-GNRY-2002: Conduct Detailed Disassembly/Assembly of the M2 Heavy-Barrel Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 Heavy-Barrel Machine Gun and reference.

STANDARD: To keep the weapon in operating condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Remove extractor
2. Remove bolt switch and stud
3. Remove cocking lever
4. Remove sear stop
5. Remove sear slide
6. Remove sear and spring
7. Remove firing pin extension and firing pin
8. Assemble bolt group

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

1833-GNRY-2003: Inspect Headspace and Timing

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2, collateral equipment and reference.

STANDARD: To prepare weapon for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect headspace
2. Inspect timing

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-12.2 under the Gunnery Skills Test. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one station. The time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

1833-GNRY-2004: Conduct Minor Boresight Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

BILLETS: Section Leader, Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle with crew, machineguns, boresight kit and reference.

STANDARD: To provide a true sight line adjustment, within 15 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct boresight procedures for M36E_
2. Conduct retention procedures

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Uppgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be performed to standard as part of the Table I.

1833-GNRY-2005: Develop a Range Card

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle in a defensive position.

STANDARD: To engage targets with the Uppgunned Weapons Station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify Main Terrain Features
2. Identify Target Reference Point
3. Identify Vehicle Location
4. Identify Sectors of Fire
5. Identify PDF and FPL
6. Identify Dead Space
7. Identify Listening/Observation Point position
8. Identify Obstacles

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event.

1833-GNRY-2006: Create Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a defensive position.

STANDARD: To provide overlapping fires and mutual support.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Combine Vehicle Range Cards
2. Illustrate Vehicles and Firing Data
3. Illustrate dead space
4. Illustrate terrain
5. Annotate orientation data

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

1833-GNRY-2007: Recognize threat/friendly vehicles and theater specific threat vehicles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a classroom present 20 combat vehicles.

STANDARD: To name 18 out of 20 Vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify characteristics of the vehicle
2. Identify the type of vehicle
3. Identify the role of the vehicle
4. Identify armament of vehicle
5. Identify the maximum range (threat) of vehicle weapons

REFERENCES:

1. ROC-V Recognition of Combat Vehicles

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations may be used as a precursor to live training in order to help maximize and enhance the live training event this task will be performed to standard as part of the Gunnery Skills Test.

1833-GNRY-2008: Install/Remove M240

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle C7.

STANDARD: To provide security for the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install pintle mount
2. Secure machine gun mount on pintle
3. Install machine gun on machine gun mount
4. Remove machine gun from machine gun mount
5. Remove machine gun mount from pintle
6. Remove pintle mount

REFERENCES:

1. TM 07268B-10/1D Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1 (AAVC7A1) Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
 2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

1833-GNRY-2009: Engage a Target with M240

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1833

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibious Vehicle C7.

STANDARD: To suppress the target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare weapon for firing
2. Load the M240
3. Set estimated range
4. Aim in on target
5. Execute fire commands
6. Change barrel
7. Troubleshoot M240

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	300

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

1833-GNRY-2010: Perform the Engagement Process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: to destroy or neutralize the threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Detect a threat
2. Identify a threat
3. Decide on a course of action
4. Execute engagement
5. Assess target effects

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This task will be executed using simulation. 2. This Task will be performed to standard during Gunnery Tables.

1833-GNRY-2011: Fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: In order to provide obscuration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the situation
2. Orient the turret/vehicle in the direction where the smoke is needed
3. Announce "grenade launcher"
4. The crew secures all hatches
5. Arm Smoke Grenade launcher switch
6. Announce "fire"
7. Fire the grenade launcher(s)
8. Safe weapon

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3D Operator's Manual, Assault Amphibious Vehicle 7A1 Family of Vehicles (With Special Mission Kits)
2. TM 10004A-10/1E Upgunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
GG24 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8 grenades per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: To demonstrate technical proficiencies as an AAV crew.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills
2. Perform crew roll over Drills
3. Send, Receive radio reports
4. Send, Receive digital reports
5. Evacuate an injured crewman
6. Boresight an AAV
7. Mount and Remove Turret Mounted Weapons

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1001	1803-GNRY-1002	1803-GNRY-1003
1803-GNRY-1004	1803-GNRY-1005	1803-GNRY-1006
1803-GNRY-1007	1803-GNRY-1008	1803-GNRY-1010
1803-GNRY-1014	1803-GNRY-1015	1803-GNRY-1016
1833-GNRY-1001	1833-GNRY-1002	1833-GNRY-1003
1833-GNRY-1004	1833-GNRY-1005	1833-GNRY-1006
1833-GNRY-1007	1833-GNRY-1010	1833-GNRY-1013
1833-GNRY-1014	1833-GNRY-1015	1833-GNRY-1016
1833-GNRY-2001	1833-GNRY-2002	1833-GNRY-2003
1833-GNRY-2004	1833-GNRY-2007	1833-GNRY-2008
1833-GNRY-2012		

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
2. ST 3-20.21-1 Individual and Crew Live-Fire Prerequisite Testing
3. TM 10004A-10/1E Ungunned Weapons Station, Assault Amphibious Vehicle

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: AAV-TT

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire. 2. Event 3 can be accomplished to standard utilizing simulation. 3. All event components can be conducted at the ramp.

AAV-GNRY-3002: Conduct Gun Table II

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table II is designed to evaluate the crews' ability to engage (dry fire) stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle (short halt/tactical control point) posture.

CONDITION: In a daylight or limited visibility environment given a fully operational AAV with full sized targets.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
2. Task #1: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-GNRY-3001

CHAINED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1001	1803-GNRY-1002	1803-GNRY-1003
1803-GNRY-1004	1803-GNRY-1005	1803-GNRY-1006
1803-GNRY-1007	1803-GNRY-1008	1803-GNRY-1009
1803-GNRY-1010	1803-GNRY-1011	1803-GNRY-1012
1803-GNRY-1013	1803-GNRY-1014	1803-GNRY-1015
1803-GNRY-1016	1803-GNRY-1017	1803-GNRY-1018
1803-GNRY-1019	1803-GNRY-1020	1833-GNRY-1001
1833-GNRY-1002	1833-GNRY-1003	1833-GNRY-1004
1833-GNRY-1005	1833-GNRY-1006	1833-GNRY-1007
1833-GNRY-1008	1833-GNRY-1009	1833-GNRY-1010
1833-GNRY-1011	1833-GNRY-1012	1833-GNRY-1013
1833-GNRY-1014	1833-GNRY-1015	1833-GNRY-1016
1833-GNRY-2001	1833-GNRY-2002	1833-GNRY-2003
1833-GNRY-2004	1833-GNRY-2005	1833-GNRY-2006
1833-GNRY-2007	1833-GNRY-2008	1833-GNRY-2009
1833-GNRY-2010	1833-GNRY-2011	1833-GNRY-2012

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. This event is a prerequisite in order to conduct live-fire. 2. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.

AAV-GNRY-3003: Conduct Gun Table III

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table III is designed to evaluate the crews' ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array with the MK19 from a stationary vehicle.

CONDITION: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, given a fully operational AAV, 3/4 scale targets (if available), Allocated Ammunition.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
2. Task #1: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	96 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live fire. 2. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.2. 3. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event.

AAV-GNRY-3004: Conduct Gun Table IV

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table IV is designed to evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array at extended ranges with the M2 from a stationary or moving (short halt/Tactical Control Point) vehicle utilizing the UGWS.

CONDITION: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, given a fully operational AAV, Full-scaled targets (3/4 optional), and allocated ammunition.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
2. Task #1: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets using the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002 AAV-GNRY-3003

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulations platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Simulation will be used to train and evaluate this task. 2. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.2. 3. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event.

AAV-GNRY-3005: Conduct Gun Table V

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table V is designed to evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving (short halt/Tactical Control Point) vehicle utilizing all weapons from the UGWS.

CONDITION: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, given a fully operational armed vehicle, full-scale targets (3/4 optional), and allocated ammunition.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
2. Task #1: Engage multiple targets one stationary one moving utilizing the UGWS
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3001 AAV-GNRY-3002 AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	450 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	450 rounds per AAV
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	48 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live fire. 4. 450 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this table, NOT both.

AAV-GNRY-3006: Conduct Gun Table VI

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VI is designed to evaluate the crew on engaging moving and stationary targets using all vehicle weapon systems while in the defensive or offensive postures.

CONDITION: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, given a fully operational armed AAV, Full-scaled targets, and allocated ammunition.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 possible of the 1,000 total points and score a minimum of 70 points on 7 out of 10 engagements.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: Engage a moving target utilizing the UGWS
2. Task #1: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the UGWS
3. Task #2: Engage a stationary target utilizing the UGWS
4. Task #3: Engage a stationary target utilizing UGWS
5. Task #4: Engage a moving target utilizing UGWS
6. Task #5: Engage multiple stationary targets utilizing UGWS
7. Task #6: Engage multiple stationary targets with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
8. Task #7: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving target with a change of weapons station between targets utilizing the UGWS
9. Task #8: Engage multiple targets; one stationary and one moving targets utilizing the UGWS
10. Task #9: Engage multiple moving targets utilizing the UGWS

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3001	AAV-GNRY-3002	AAV-GNRY-3003
AAV-GNRY-3004	AAV-GNRY-3005	

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	450 rounds per AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	450 rounds per AAV
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	56 rounds per AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scenario development, vehicle Posture and target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation will be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. Crews will receive an overall qualification rating (Distinguished, Superior, Qualified, Unqualified) for Table VI based on the common scoring model dual qualification criteria(qualified tasks and total crew points)per the MCWP 3-12.2. 4. Crews must have passed GST, Table I, Gate to Live-Fire, and Table II prior to live fire. 5. 450 rounds of DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this task, NOT both.

4000-LEVEL GUNNERY EVENTS

AAV-GNRY-4001: Conduct Gun Table VII

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to fire and maneuver as a section.

CONDITION: Given an AAV maneuver element section (with MILES), Allocated training ammunition, Full-sized or scaled targets and Operation Order (OPORD).

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical

scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-TCSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: AAV-GNRY-3006

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 AAV Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A598 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Li	350 rounds per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. AAV-TT. 2. Deployable Virtual Training
Equipment (DVTE). 3. MILES/CVTES.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. All Crews must have passed the GST and GT I within the previous three months (6 months for Reserve component).

AAV-GNRY-4002: Conduct Gun Table VIII

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks and prepare section for qualification.

CONDITION: Given an AAV maneuver element section, allocated training ammunition, Full-sized or scaled targets and Operation Order (OPORD).

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-TCSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3006 AAV-GNRY-4001

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 AAV Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. AAV-TT. 2. Deployable Virtual Training Equipment (DVTE). 3. MILES.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. All Crews must have passed the GST and GT I within the previous three months (6 months for Reserve component).

AAV-GNRY-4003: Conduct Gun Table IX

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table IX is designed to evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

CONDITION: Given an AAV maneuver element section, allocated training ammunition, Full-sized or scaled targets and Operation Order (OPORD).

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commanders METT-TSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a section
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3006 AAV-GNRY-4001 AAV-GNRY-4002

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 AAV Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	1200 rounds per Section
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	1200 rounds per Section
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	256 rounds per Section

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 TANK/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. AAV-TT. 2. Deployable Virtual Training
Equipment (DVTE). 3. MILES.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Section Qualification must be conducted live-fire using full-caliber ammunition. 3. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 4. All Crews must have passed the GST and GT I within the previous three months (6 months for Reserve component). 5. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII. DODIC A576 or A555 will be used to execute this table, not both.

5000-LEVEL GUNNERY EVENTS

AAV-GNRY-5001: Conduct Gun Table X

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table X is designed to train and evaluate the Platoons ability to execute collective tasks.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon (with MILES), allocated training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and Operations Order (OPORD).

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical

scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-TCSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3006 AAV-GNRY-4003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 AAV Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A598 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Li	4200 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. AAV-TT; 2. Deployable Virtual Training
Equipment (DVTE); 3. MILES.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII. 4. If MILES is unavailable Table will be conducted using dry fire techniques.

AAV-GNRY-5002: Conduct Gun Table XI

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the Platoons ability to execute collective tasks.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon, allocated training ammunition, fully sized or scaled targets and operations order (OPORD)

STANDARD: To pass with the rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-TCSL

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3006 AAV-GNRY-4003

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 AAV Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. AAV-TT; 2. Deployable Virtual Training
Equipment (DVTE); 3. MILES.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scoring of target presentation must
adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in
MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire
training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3.
Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and
XII. If MILES is unavailable Table will be conducted using dry fire
techniques

AAV-GNRY-5003: Conduct Gun Table XII

SUPPORTED MET(S):

MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Gun Table XII is designed to evaluate the platoon's ability to
execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a fully equipped maneuver element platoon, allocated
training ammunition, full-sized or scaled targets and Operations order
(OPORD).

STANDARD: To pass with a rating of Needs Practice (P) for all tactical
scenarios, and achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined
by the commanders METT-TCSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon

2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3006 AAV-GNRY-4003 AAV-GNRY-5001
AAV-GNRY-5002

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.15 AAV Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12.2 Heavy Brigade Combat Team (HBCT) Gunnery
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A555 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Ball M33 Link	3600 rounds per Platoon
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	3600 rounds per Platoon
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod	768 rounds per Platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: 1. AAV-TT; 2. Deployable Virtual Training
Equipment (DVTE); 3. MILES.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Scoring of target presentation must adhere to the Minimum Proficiency Levels (MPLs) for collective tables in MCPW 3-12.2. 2. Simulation can be used as a precursor to live-fire training in order to maximize and enhance the live fire training event. 3. Sections must qualify on Table IX as a prerequisite to Tables X, XI and XII. 4. 3600 rounds of DODIC A576 OR A555 will be used to execute this task, not both.
